

**MATHETES BIBLE COLLEGE** (USA/GHANA)

**SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY** (MBC3)

PROGRAM: BACHELOR OF THEOLOGY (BTh.)  
MASTER OF THEOLOGY (MTh.)  
(1 YEAR INTENSIVE)

**LECTURER**  
**BISHOP NII NAI MENSAH**  
**(CHURCH BUILDERS CONSULT)**

# **MATHETES BIBLE COLLEGE** (GHANA/USA)

(FULLY ACCREDITED by WWAC, USA)

## **INTRODUCTION**

The Mathetes Bible College **BACHELOR IN THEOLOGY** degree is a **ONE-YEAR INTENSIVE** program directed to meet the leadership needs of the church today. It is not necessarily academic but basically practical theology stuff well-tailored to fix the leadership gaps in the church, community and the nation. The goals of the Bachelors program is exactly what the world is yearning for in the mental, physical and spiritual spectrum.

## **THE ESSENCE OF MATHETES DEGREE PROGRAMS**

In a chaotic and disjointed world where the devil seems to be in control, we need men and women of God who have been trained, equipped and ready to become world changers under the unction and power of the Holy Spirit infilling. And this is what the Bachelors and the Masters Degree programs exactly offer. Both the Bachelors and the Masters programs have online and classroom medium of tuition and course materials available. Seekers are at liberty to opt for what suites them.

## **COURSE REQUIREMENTS**

- A prospective student must be already a Christian, and if not, one can still apply because we believe the Holy Spirit can touch such and him/her a Christian or child of God.
- Seekers must be 18 years and above.
- No basic academic qualifications required but seekers must be able to read and write and fluent in the English language.

## **COURSE SUMMARY:**

### **MBC14: SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY**

The course curriculum deals with the various Bible doctrines and gives a meaningful understanding to the doctrines and how to teach and train other prospective leader with it. Complicated topics such as how to be convinced about the existence of God and the theodicy of God – if God exists, why is the world going through such untold suffering, chaos, wars, and evil is prevalent. Prospective seekers would be taken through other areas such as eternal security among

others. this course is well tailored for Pastors and other intense seekers of the truth like the Ethiopian eunuch.

**BACHELOR IN THEOLOGY Program: One-year intensive:**

**COURSE LIST:**

- MBC1 PERSONAL MINISTRY DEVELOPMENT
- MBC2 PREACHING (HOMILETICS) AND PASTORAL THEOLOGY
- MBC3 SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY
- MBC4 LEADERSHIP DEVELOPMENT
- MBC5 MISSIOLOGY (SCHOOL OF MISSIONS)
- MBC6 SPIRITUAL DEVELOPMENT AND IMPARTATION
- MBC7 BIBLICAL THEOLOGY
- MBC8 COMPARATIVE AND ETHICS THEOLOGY
- MBC9 HISTORICAL THEOLOGY
- 50 PAGE DISSERTATION PAPER

**MASTER IN THEOLOGY Programs: One-year intensive:**

**COURSE LIST**

- MBC10 BASIC THEOLOGY
- MBC11 ETHICS AND LOYALTY THEOLOGY
- MBC12 STRATEGIC LEADERSHP DEVELOPMENT
- MBC13 FAITH THEOLOGY (SCHOOL OF FAITH)
- MBC14 REVIVAL THEOLOGY
- MBC15 POWER HEALING AND HEARING FROM GOD
- 200 PAGE DISSERTATION and CLASS PRESENTATIONS

**MATHETES BIBLE COLLEGE program schedule (1YEAR INTENSIVE):**

Master In Theology: Every Monday 7AM-1PM

Bachelor In Theology: Every Tuesday 7AM-4PM

Bachelor In Theology program: Every Saturday 7AM-4PM

**For further information, call or WhatsApp:**

The President, Bishop Nii Nai Mensah (+233-276716461)

[www.mathetesbiblecollege.org](http://www.mathetesbiblecollege.org)

[info@mbc.org](mailto:info@mbc.org)

## CONTENTS

Systematic Theology	3
Theology Proper – The Study of God	5
Bibliology – The Bible	24
Pneumatology – The Study of the Holy Spirit	44
Christology – Study of Christy	73
Soteriology – Salvation	111

# SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY

**Systematic theology** is a discipline of [Christian theology](#) that formulates an orderly, rational, and coherent account of the [doctrines](#) of the Christian faith. It addresses issues such as what the Bible teaches about certain topics or what is true about God and his universe. It also builds on biblical disciplines, [church history](#), as well as [biblical](#) and [historical theology](#). Systematic theology shares its systematic tasks with other disciplines such as [constructive theology](#), [dogmatics](#), [ethics](#) and [apologetics](#).

## Biblical Theology

Because scholars have tended to use the term in different ways, **biblical theology** has been notoriously difficult to define.

## Description

Although most speak of biblical [theology](#) as a particular method or emphasis within [biblical studies](#), some scholars have also used the term in reference to its distinctive content. In this understanding, biblical theology is limited to a collation and restatement of biblical data, without the logical analysis between texts that [systematic theology](#) emphasizes.

Others focus on the New Testament; the field of New Testament theology likewise seeks understanding from within the bounds of these documents and their historical contexts.

## In Evangelicalism

In [evangelicalism](#) biblical theology is a discipline of [theology](#) which emphasizes the [progressive nature of biblical revelation](#). Graeme Goldsworthy explains the relationship between biblical theology and [systematic theology](#) as follows:

Biblical theology, as defined here, is dynamic not static. That is, it follows the movement and process of God's revelation in the Bible. It is closely related to systematic theology (the two are dependent upon one another), but there is a difference in emphasis.

Biblical theology is not concerned to state the final doctrines which go to make up the content of Christian belief, but rather to describe the *process* by which revelation unfolds and moves toward the goal which is God's final revelation of his purposes in Jesus Christ. Biblical theology seeks to understand the relationships between the various eras in God's revealing activity recorded in the Bible.

The systematic theologian is mainly interested in the finished article - the statement of Christian doctrine. The biblical theologian on the other hand is concerned rather with the progressive unfolding of truth. It is on the basis of biblical theology that the systematic theologian draws upon the pre-Pentecost texts of the Bible as part of the material from which *Christian* doctrine may be formulated.

## THEOLOGY PROPER – THE STUDY OF GOD

**Theology proper** is the sub-discipline of systematic theology which deals specifically with the being, attributes and works of God.

In Christian and Trinitarian setting, this study includes pneumatology (the study of the Holy Spirit) and Christology (the study of Jesus Christ). The term theology means the study of God is popularly described as "talk about God" or God-talk.

In some circles, it is usually used in the general sense described as religious studies.

### TOPICS PERTAINING TO THEOLOGY PROPER

1. Apophatic theology
2. Attributes of God
3. Cataphatic theology
4. Christology
5. Divine simplicity
6. Eternality
7. Godhead (Christianity)
8. God the Father
9. Immutability
10. Impassibility
11. Kenosis
12. Monotheism
13. Omnipotence
14. Omnipresence
15. Omniscience
16. Ontology
17. Pneumatology
18. Prescience
19. The Transcendentals
20. Trinitarian Theology
21. Theodicy

Theology Proper includes the following:

### **KATAPHATIC THEOLOGY**

Cataphatic theology, which approaches God on a positive note by affirmations or positive statements about what God *is*, who God is and what He has done. According to Dionysius, it is attributing all the perfections to God.

### **TRANSCENDENT AND IMMANENCE OF GOD**

Transcendent of God is attributing all perfections of the created order to God as its source. In this sense, we can say "God is Love", "God is Beauty", "God is Good."

The immanence of God is God being within His creation. The dual concept of the immanence and transcendence of God can help us to understand the simultaneous truth of both "ways" to God: at the same time as God is immanent, God is also transcendent. At the same time as God is knowable, God is also unknowable. God cannot be thought of as one or the other only. Thus, God is not only knowable or unknowable. He is both.

### **APOPHATIC THEOLOGY**

On the other hand, Apophatic theology, also known as negative theology, is a form of theological thinking and religious practice which attempts to approach God in a negative way, or by negation, or the denial of the Divine, or to speak only in terms of what may not be said about the perfect goodness that is God.

On the other hand, the apophatic or negative way stresses God's absolute transcendence and unknowability in such a way that we cannot say anything about the divine essence because God is so totally beyond being.

Attributes of God is part of theology proper.

**CHRISTOLOGY** (to be discussed in detail later) is part of systematic theology. Theology proper is also part of systematic theology.

Christology is the field of study within [Christian theology](#) which is primarily concerned with the [ontology](#) and person of [Jesus](#) as recorded in the [canonical Gospels](#) and



the **epistles** of the **New Testament**. Primary considerations include the ontology and person of Jesus in conjunction with his relationship with that of **God the Father**.

Christology is concerned with the details of **Jesus' ministry, his acts and teachings**, to arrive at a clearer understanding of who he is in his person, and his role in **salvation**.<sup>[5]</sup> The views of **Paul the Apostle** provided a major component of the Christology of the **Apostolic Age**. Paul's central themes included the notion of the **pre-existence of Christ** and the worship of Christ as **Kyrios** (**Greek: Lord**).

The **pre-existence of Christ** became a central theme of Christology. Proponents of Christ's deity argue the **Old Testament** has many cases of **Christophany**: "The pre-existence of Christ is further substantiated by the many recorded Christophanies in the Bible." "Christophany" (Christ became flesh) is often considered a more accurate term than the term "**theophany**" (God became flesh) due to the belief that all the visible manifestations of God are in fact the preincarnate Christ.

Many argue that the appearances of "**the Angel of the Lord**" in the Old Testament were the preincarnate Christ. "Many understand the angel of the Lord as a true theophany. From the time of **Justin** on, the figure has been regarded as the preincarnate **Logos**."

### **DIVINE SIMPLICITY**

In **theology**, the doctrine of **divine simplicity** says that **God** is without parts. The general idea can be stated in this way: the **being** of God is identical to the "attributes" of God. Characteristics such as **omnipresence**, goodness, truth, eternity, etc. are identical to God's being, not qualities that make up that being, nor abstract entities inhering in God as in a **substance**; in other words we can say that in God both **essence** and **existence** are one and the same

### **ETERNITY**

**Eternity** in **common parlance** is an infinitely long period of **time**. In **classical philosophy**, however, eternity is defined as what exists outside time while sempiternity is the concept that corresponds to the colloquial definition of eternity.

Eternity is an important concept in many **religions**, where the god or gods are said to endure eternally. Some, such as **Aristotle**, would say the same about the

natural [cosmos](#) in regard to both past and future eternal duration, and like the eternal [Platonic forms](#), [immutability](#) was considered essential.

## DOCTRINE OF GOD

**God in Christianity** is the [eternal being](#) who [created](#) and [preserves](#) all things. Christians believe God to be both [transcendent](#) (wholly independent of, and removed from, the material universe) and [immanent](#) (involved in the world). Christian teachings of the immanence and involvement of God and his love for humanity exclude the belief that God [is of the same substance](#) as the created universe but accept that God's divine Nature was [hypostatically united](#) to human nature in the person of [Jesus Christ](#), in an event known as the [Incarnation](#).

God's character is described primarily using three adjectives: eternal, infinite, and unchangeable.

## GODHEAD IN CHRISTIANITY

**Godhead** (or *Godhood*), is the [divinity](#) or substance (*ousia*) of the [Christian God](#), the substantial impersonal being of God, as opposed to the individual persons or [hypostases](#) of the [Trinity](#); in other words, *the Godhead* refers to the "what" of God, and *God* refers to the "who" of God. The concept is especially important in Christian [negative theology](#), e.g., the theology of the Godhead according to [Pseudo-Dionysius](#). Within some religious traditions which take Christian themes but not doctrine, such as [Mormonism](#), the term is used as a [nontrinitarian](#) substitute for the term *Trinity*, denoting the [Father](#), [Son](#), and [Holy Spirit](#) not as a Trinity, but as a unified council of separate beings in full harmony.

## GOD THE FATHER

**God the Father** is a title given to [God](#) in various religions, most prominently in [Christianity](#). In mainstream [trinitarian](#) Christianity, God the Father is regarded as the first person of the [Trinity](#), followed by the second person [God the Son](#) (Jesus Christ) and the third person [God the Holy Spirit](#). Since the second century, Christian [creeds](#) included affirmation of belief in "God the Father ([Almighty](#))", primarily as his capacity as "Father and creator of the universe".

Yet, in Christianity the concept of [God as the father of Jesus Christ](#) goes metaphysically further than the concept of God as the Creator and father of all people,<sup>[2]</sup> as indicated in the [Apostle's Creed](#) where the expression of belief in the "Father almighty, creator of

heaven and earth" is immediately, but separately followed by in "Jesus Christ, his only Son, our Lord", thus expressing both senses of fatherhood.<sup>[3]</sup>

In Christianity, God is addressed as the Father, in part because of his active interest in human affairs, in the way that a father would take an interest in his children who are dependent on him and as a father, he will respond to humanity, his children, acting in their best interests. Many believe they can communicate with God and come closer to him through [prayer](#) – a key element of achieving communion with God.

In general, the title *Father* (capitalized) signifies God's role as the life-giver, the [authority](#), and powerful protector, often viewed as immense, [omnipotent](#), [omniscient](#), [omnipresent](#) with infinite power and [charity](#) that goes beyond human understanding. For instance, after completing his monumental work *Summa Theologica*, Catholic St. [Thomas Aquinas](#) concluded that he had not yet begun to understand 'God the Father'.

Although the term "Father" implies [masculine characteristics](#), God is usually defined as having the form of a [spirit](#) without any human biological gender, e.g. the [Catechism of the Catholic Church #239](#) specifically states that "*God is neither man nor woman: he is God.*" Although God is never directly addressed as "Mother", at times motherly attributes may be interpreted in [Old Testament](#) references such as [Isa 42:14](#), [Isa 49:14–15](#) or [Isa 66:12–13](#).

In the [New Testament](#), the Christian concept of God the Father may be seen as a continuation of the Jewish concept, but with specific additions and changes, which over time made the Christian concept become even more distinct by the start of the [Middle Ages](#).

The conformity to the Old Testament concepts is shown in [Matthew 4:10](#) and [Luke 4:8](#) where in [response to temptation](#) Jesus quotes [Deuteronomy 6:13](#) and states: "It is written, you shall worship the Lord your God, and him only shall you serve. [1 Corinthians 8:6](#) shows the distinct Christian teaching about the *agency of Christ* by first stating: "there is one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we unto him" and immediately continuing with "and one Lord, Jesus Christ, through whom are all things, and we through him."

This passage clearly acknowledges the Jewish teachings on the uniqueness of God, yet also states the role of Jesus as an agent in creation. Over time, the **Christian doctrine** began to fully diverge from Judaism through the teachings of the **Church Fathers** in the second century and by the fourth century belief in the **Trinity** was formalized.

According to Mary Rose D'Angelo and James Barr, the Aramaic term *Abba* was a word normally used by sons and daughters, throughout their lives, in the family context.

## IMMUTABILITY

The **Immutability of God** is an attribute that "**God** is unchanging in his character, will, and covenant promises."

The **Westminster Shorter Catechism** says that "[God] is Spirit, whose being, wisdom power, holiness, justice, goodness, and **truth** are infinite, eternal, and unchangeable." Those things do not change. A number of Scriptures attest to this idea (such as Num. 23:19; 1 Sam. 15:29; Ps. 102:26; Mal. 3:6; 2 Tim. 2:13; Heb. 6:17–18; Jam. 1:17).

God's immutability defines all God's other attributes: God is immutably wise, merciful, good, and gracious. The same may be said about God's knowledge: **God** is almighty (having all power), God is **omnipotent** (having all power), **God** is **omnipresent** (present everywhere), **God** is **omniscient** (knows everything), eternally and immutably so. Infiniteness and immutability in **God** are mutually supportive and imply each other. An infinite and changing God is inconceivable; indeed, it is a contradiction in definition.

## KENOSIS

In **Christian theology**, *kenosis* lit. [the act of emptying]) is the 'self-emptying' of Jesus' own will and becoming entirely receptive to **God's** divine will.

The word is used in **Philippians 2:7**, "[Jesus] made himself nothing he emptied himself "to empty."

## MONOTHEISM

**Monotheism** has been defined as the belief in the existence of only one **God** that created the world, is all-powerful and intervenes in the world. A broader definition of monotheism is the belief in one God.

## OMNIPOTENCE

**Omnipotence** is the quality of having unlimited power. **Monotheistic religions** generally attribute omnipotence to only the **deity** of their faith. In the **Abrahamic religions**, omnipotence is often listed as one of a deity's characteristics among many, including **omniscience**, **omnipresence**, and **omnibenevolence**. The presence of all these properties in a single entity has given rise to considerable **theological** debate, prominently including the problem of **theodicy**, the question of why such a deity would permit the manifestation of evil.

## MEANINGS

The term omnipotent has been used to connote a number of different positions. These positions include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. A deity is able to do anything that it chooses to do. (In this version God can do the impossible).
2. A deity is able to do anything that is in accord with its own nature (thus, for instance, if it is a **logical consequence** of a deity's nature that what it speaks is truth, then it is not able to **lie**).
3. It is part of a deity's nature to be consistent and that it would be inconsistent for said deity to go against its own laws unless there was a reason to do so.

## OMNIPRESENCE

**Omnipresence** or **ubiquity** is the property of being present everywhere. The term omnipresence is most often used in a **religious** context as an attribute of a **deity** or **supreme being (God)**, while the term ubiquity is generally used to describe something "existing or being everywhere at the same time, constantly encountered, widespread, common." Ubiquitous can also be used as a synonym for words like worldwide, universal, global, pervasive, all over the place.

The omnipresence of a supreme being is conceived differently by different religious systems. In **monotheistic** beliefs like **Christianity**, **Judaism**, and **Islam** the divine and the universe are separate, but the divine is present everywhere. In **pantheistic** beliefs the divine and the universe are identical. In **panentheistic** beliefs the divine interpenetrates the universe, but extends beyond it in time and space.

## OMNISCIENCE

**Omniscience** is the capacity to know everything. In **monotheistic** religions, such as the **Abrahamic religion**, this is an **attribute of God**. In some other religions that do not include a supreme deity, such as **Buddhism** and **Jainism**, omniscience is an attribute that any individual can eventually attain.

## PNEUMATOLOGY

**Pneumatology** in **Christianity** refers to a particular discipline within **Christian theology** that focuses on the study of the **Holy Spirit**. The term is essentially derived from the **Greek** word *Pneuma*, which designates "breath" or "spirit" and metaphorically describes a non-material being or influence. The English term *pneumatology* comes from (*pneuma*, spirit). Pneumatology includes study of the person of the Holy Spirit, and the works of the Holy Spirit.<sup>[1]</sup> This latter category also includes Christian teachings on **new birth**, **spiritual gifts** (charismata), **Spirit-baptism**, **sanctification**, the **inspiration of prophets**, and the indwelling of the Holy Trinity (which in itself covers many different aspects). Different **Christian denominations** have different theological approaches on various pneumatological questions.

## TRINITARIAN THEOLOGY

The **Christian doctrine** of the **Trinity** (**Latin: Trinitas**, from **Latin: trinus** "threefold") holds that **God** is **one God**, but three co-eternal **consubstantial** persons or *hypostases*—the **Father**, the **Son (Jesus Christ)**, and the **Holy Spirit**—as "one God in three Divine Persons". The three Persons are distinct, yet are one "substance, essence or nature" (**homoousios**). In this context, a "nature" is *what* one is, whereas a "person" is *who* one is. Sometimes differing views are referred to as **nontrinitarian**.

Trinitarianism contrasts with positions such as **Binitarianism** (one deity in two persons) and **Monarchianism** (no plurality of persons within God), of which **Modalistic Monarchianism** (one deity revealed in three modes) and **Unitarianism** (one deity in one person). Additionally, the **Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints** believes the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost are three separate beings, two of which possess separate bodies of flesh and bones, while the Holy Ghost has only a body of spirit; and that their unity is not physical, but in purpose.

While scripture does not contain the word *Trinity*, an indication of three distinct persons can be found in **1 John 5:7**. Early Christian belief in the deity of Jesus Christ existed since the first century in the writings of **John the Apostle** (**John 1:1, 20:28**), **Paul the Apostle** (**Titus 2:13, Romans 9:5, Hebrews 1:8-10**), **Peter the Apostle** (**2 Peter 1:1**), as

well as in the writings of [Ignatius of Antioch](#), a disciple of John who was born about the beginning of the Apostolic age (c. 35). Jesus is also quoted as attesting to being one with and equal with the Father, sharing in the glory of the Father before the world began ([John 8:58, 10:30, 17:5](#)).

## THEODICY

**Theodicy**, in its most common form, is an attempt to answer the question of why a good [God](#) permits the manifestation of [evil](#), thus resolving the issue of the [problem of evil](#). Some theodicies also address the [evidential problem of evil](#) by attempting "to make the existence of an [all-knowing](#), [all-powerful](#) and [all-good or omnibenevolent](#) God consistent with the existence of evil or suffering in the world."

Unlike a defense, which tries to demonstrate that [God's existence](#) is logically possible in the light of evil, a theodicy attempts to provide a framework wherein God's existence is also plausible.

## ATTRIBUTES OF GOD

Enumeration

The [Westminster Shorter Catechism](#)'s definition of God is merely an enumeration of his attributes: "God is a Spirit, infinite, eternal, and unchangeable in his being, wisdom, power, holiness, justice, goodness, and truth." The [Westminster Larger Catechism](#) adds certain attributes to this description, such as "all-sufficient," "incomprehensible," "everywhere present" and "knowing all things". This answer has been criticized, however, as having "nothing specifically Christian about it."

## ASEITY

The [aseity](#) of God means "God is so independent that he does not need us." It is based on [Acts 17:25](#), where it says that God "is not served by human hands, as if he needed anything" ([NIV](#)). This is often related to God's *self-existence* and his *self-sufficiency*.

## ETERNITY

The [eternity of God](#) concerns his existence beyond time. Drawing on verses such as [Psalm 90:2](#), [Wayne Grudem](#) states that, "God has no beginning, end, or succession of moments in his own being, and he sees all time equally vividly, yet God sees events in time and acts in time." The expression "[Alpha and Omega](#)" also used as title of God

in *Book of Revelation*. God's *eternity* may be seen as an aspect of his *infinity*, discussed below.

## GOODNESS

The *goodness* of God means that "God is the final standard of good, and all that God is and does is worthy of approval." *Romans 11:22* in the *King James Version* says "Behold therefore the goodness and severity of God". Many theologians consider the goodness of God as an overarching attribute - *Louis Berkhof*, for example, sees it as including *kindness, love, grace, mercy* and *longsuffering*. The idea that God is "all good" is called his *omnibenevolence*.

## GRACIOUSNESS

The *graciousness* of God is a key tenet of Christianity. In *Exodus 34:5-6*, it is part of the *Name of God*, "Yahweh, Yahweh, the compassionate and gracious God". The descriptive of God in this text is, in Jewish tradition, called the "*Thirteen Attributes of Mercy*".

The word "gracious" is not used often in the *New Testament* to describe God, although the noun "grace" is used more than 100 times. *1 Peter 2:2-3* in the *King James Version* says "the Lord is gracious", but the *New International Version* has "the Lord is good".

## HOLINESS

The *holiness* of God is that he is separate from sin and incorruptible. Noting the refrain of "*Holy, holy, holy*" in *Isaiah 6:3* and *Revelation 4:8*, *R. C. Sproul* points out that "only once in sacred Scripture is an attribute of God elevated to the third degree... The Bible never says that God is love, love, love."

## IMMANENCE

The *immanence* of God refers to him being in the world. It is thus contrasted with his *transcendence*, but Christian theologians usually emphasize that the two attributes are not contradictory. To hold to transcendence but not immanence is *deism*, while to hold to immanence but not transcendence is *pantheism*. According to *Wayne Grudem*, "the God of the Bible is no abstract deity removed from, and uninterested in his creation". Grudem goes on to say that the whole Bible "is the story of God's involvement with his creation", but highlights verses such as *Acts 17:28*, "in him we live and move and have our being".



## IMMUTABILITY

**Immutability** means God cannot change. **James 1:17** refers to the "Father of the heavenly lights, who does not change like shifting shadows" (NIV). **Herman Bavinck** notes that although the Bible talks about God repenting, changing his purpose, and becoming angry, "Scripture testifies that in all these various relations and experiences God remains ever the same."<sup>[14]</sup> **Millard Erickson** calls this attribute God's *constancy*.

The immutability of God is being increasingly criticized by advocates of **open theism**, which argues that God is open to influence through the prayers, decisions, and actions of people. Prominent adherents of open theism include **Clark Pinnock**, **John E. Sanders** and **Gregory Boyd**.

## IMPASSIBILITY

The doctrine of the **impassibility** of God is a controversial one. It is usually defined as the inability of God to suffer, while recognizing that **Jesus**, who is **believed to be God**, suffered in his human nature. The **Westminster Confession of Faith** says that God is "without body, parts, or passions". Although some take this to mean that God is "without emotions whether of joy, sorrow, pain or grief", most interpret this as meaning that God is free from all attitudes "which reflect instability or lack of control."<sup>[18]</sup> **Robert Reymond** says that "it should be understood to mean that God has no *bodily* passions such as hunger or the human drive for sexual fulfillment."

**D. A. Carson** argues that "although Aristotle may exercise more than a little scarcely recognized influence upon those who uphold impassibility, at its best impassibility is trying to avoid a picture of God who is changeable, given over to mood swings, dependent on his creatures." In this way, impassibility is connected to the *immutability* of God, which says that God does not change, and to the *aseity* of God, which says that God does not need anything. Carson affirms that God is able to suffer, but argues that if he does so "it is because he chooses to suffer."

## IMPECCABILITY

The **impeccability** of God is closely related to his holiness. It means that God is *unable* to sin, which is a stronger statement than merely saying that God *does not* sin. **Hebrews 6:18** says that "it is impossible for God to lie". **Robert Morey** argues that God does not have the "absolute freedom" found in **Greek philosophy**. Whereas "the Greeks assumed the gods were 'free' to become demons if they so chose," the God of the Bible "is 'free' to act only in conformity to His nature."

## INCOMPREHENSIBILITY

The *incomprehensibility* of God means that he is not able to be fully known. [Isaiah 40:28](#) says "his understanding no one can fathom". [Louis Berkhof](#) states that "the consensus of opinion" through most of church history has been that God is the "Incomprehensible One". Berkhof, however, argues that, "in so far as God reveals Himself in His attributes, we also have some knowledge of His Divine Being, though even so our knowledge is subject to human limitations."

## INCORPOREALITY

The *incorporeality* or *spirituality* of God refers to him being a Spirit. This is derived from [Jesus'](#) statement in [John 4:24](#), "God is Spirit." [Robert Reymond](#) suggests that it is the fact of his *spiritual* essence that underlies the [second commandment](#), which prohibits every attempt to fashion an *image* of him."

## INFINITY

The infinity of God includes both his *eternity* and his *immensity*. [Isaiah 40:28](#) says that "Yahweh is the everlasting God," while [Solomon](#) acknowledges in [1 Kings 8:27](#) that "the heavens, even the highest heaven, cannot contain you". Infinity permeates all other attributes of God: his goodness, love, power, etc. are all considered to be infinite.

The relationship between the infinity of God and *mathematical infinity* has often been discussed.<sup>[26]</sup> [Georg Cantor's](#) work on infinity in mathematics was accused of undermining God's infinity, but Cantor argued that God's infinity is the *Absolute Infinite*, which transcends other forms of infinity.

## JEALOUSY

[Exodus 20:5-6](#), of the [Decalogue](#) says, "You shall not bow down to them or worship them; for I, the LORD your God, am a jealous God, punishing the children for the sin of the parents to the third and fourth generation of those who hate me, but showing love to a thousand generations of those who love me and keep my commandments" (NIV). [J. I. Packer](#) sees God's jealousy as "zeal to protect a love relationship or to avenge it when broken," thus making it "an aspect of his covenant love for his own people."

## LOVE

1 John 4:8;16 says "God is Love." D. A. Carson speaks of the "difficult doctrine of the love of God," since "when informed Christians talk about the love of God they mean something very different from what is meant in the surrounding culture."<sup>[29]</sup> Carson distinguishes between the love the Father has for the Son, God's general love for his creation, God's "salvific stance towards his fallen world," his "particular, effectual, selecting love toward his elect," and love that is conditioned on obedience.

## MISSION

While the mission of God is not traditionally included in this list, David Bosch has argued that "mission is not primarily an activity of the church, but an attribute of God." Christopher J. H. Wright argues for a biblical basis for Mission that goes beyond the Great Commission, and suggests that "missionary texts" may sparkle like gems, but that "simply laying out such gems on a string is not yet what one could call a missiological hermeneutic of the whole Bible itself."

## MYSTERY

Many theologians see mystery as God's primary attribute because he only reveals certain knowledge to the human race. Karl Barth said "God is ultimate mystery." Karl Rahner views "God" as "mystery" and theology as "the 'science' of mystery." Nikolai Berdyaev deems "inexplicable Mystery" as God's "most profound definition." Ian Ramsey defines God as "permanent mystery,"

## OMNIPOTENCE

The omnipotence of God refers to Him being "all powerful". This is often conveyed with the phrase "Almighty", as in the Old Testament title "God Almighty" (the conventional translation of the Hebrew title *El Shaddai*) and the title "God the Father Almighty" in the Apostles' Creed.

Jesus says in Matthew 19:26, "with God all things are possible". C. S. Lewis clarifies this concept: "His Omnipotence means power to do all that is intrinsically possible, not to do the intrinsically impossible. You may attribute miracles to him, but not nonsense. This is no limit to his power."

## OMNIPRESENCE

The omnipresence of God refers to him being present everywhere. Berkhof distinguishes between God's *immensity* and his *omnipresence*, saying that the former "points to the

fact that God transcends all space and is not subject to its limitations," emphasizing his *transcendence*, while the latter denotes that God "fills every part of space with His entire Being," emphasizing his *immanence*. In [Psalm 139](#), David says, "If I go up to the heavens, you are there; if I make my bed in the [depths](#), you are there" ([Psalm 139:8](#), NIV).

## OMNISCIENCE

The [omniscience](#) of God refers to him being "all knowing". [Berkhof](#) regards the *wisdom* of God as a "particular aspect of his knowledge."<sup>[39]</sup> [Romans 16:27](#) speaks about the "only wise God".

## ONENESS

The oneness, or *unity* of God refers to his being one and only. This means that Christianity is [monotheistic](#), although the doctrine of the [Trinity](#) says that God is three persons: [Father](#), [Son](#), and [Holy Spirit](#). The [Athanasian Creed](#) says "we worship one God in Trinity, and Trinity in Unity."

The most notable biblical affirmation of the unity of God is found in [Deuteronomy 6:4](#). The statement, known as the [Shema Yisrael](#), after its first two words in Hebrew, says "Hear, O Israel: Yahweh our God, Yahweh is one." In the [New Testament](#), [Jesus](#) upholds the oneness of God by quoting these words in [Mark 12:29](#). The [Apostle Paul](#) also affirms the oneness of God in verses like [Ephesians 4:6](#).

The oneness of God is also related to his *simplicity*.

## PROVIDENCE

While the [providence of God](#) usually refers to his activity in the world, it also implies his care for the universe, and is thus an attribute. Although the word is not used in the Bible to refer to God, the concept is found in verses such as [Acts 17:25](#), which says that God "gives all men life and breath and everything else" (NIV).

A distinction is usually made between "general providence," which refers to God's continuous upholding the existence and natural order of the universe, and "special providence," which refers to God's extraordinary intervention in the life of people.

## RIGHTEOUSNESS

The [righteousness](#) of God may refer to his holiness, to his justice, or to his saving activity. A notable occurrence of the word is in [Romans 1:17](#) - "for in the gospel the righteousness

of God is revealed" (NIV). [Martin Luther](#) grew up believing that this referred to an attribute of God - namely, his [distributive justice](#). Luther's [change of mind](#) and subsequent interpretation of the phrase as referring to the righteousness which God [imputes to the believer](#) was a major factor in the [Protestant Reformation](#). [More recently](#), however, scholars such as [N. T. Wright](#) have argued that the verse refers to an attribute of God after all - this time, his covenant faithfulness.

## SIMPLICITY

The [simplicity of God](#) means he is not partly this and partly that, but that whatever he is, he is so entirely. It is thus related to the *unity* of God. Grudem notes that this is a less common use of the word "simple" - that is, "not composed of parts". Grudem distinguishes between God's "unity of singularity" (in that God is one God) and his "unity of simplicity."

## SOVEREIGNTY

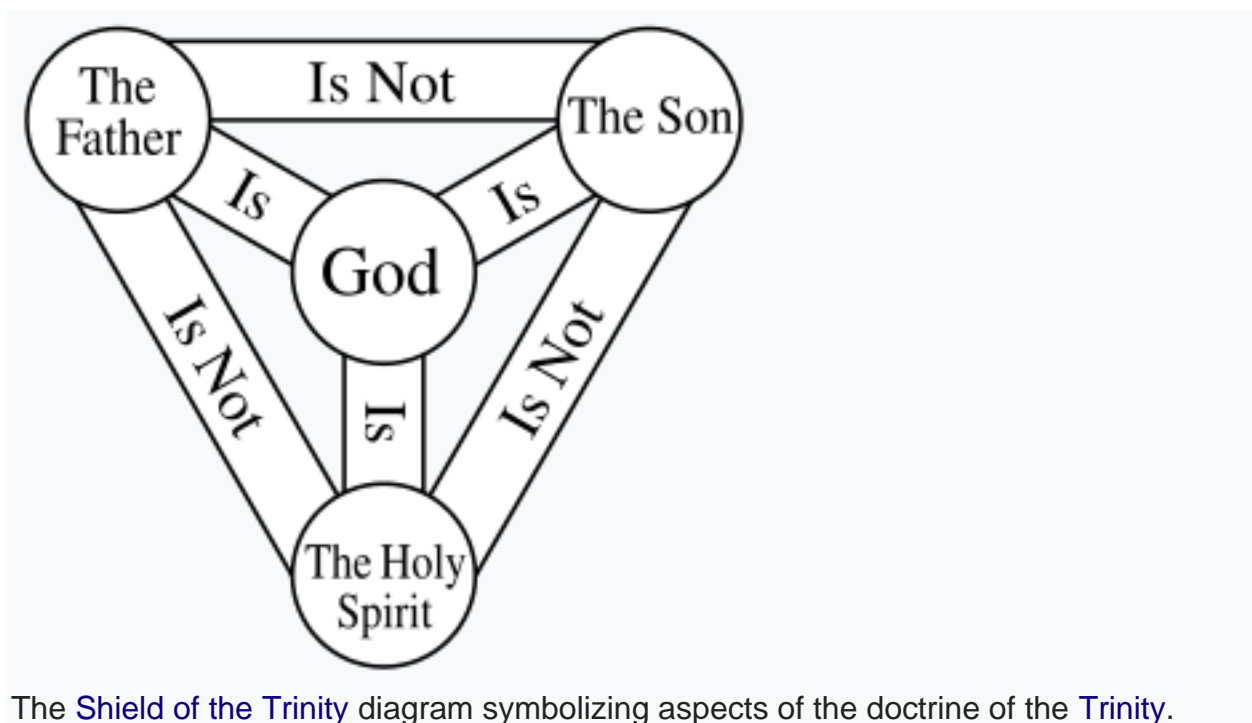
The [sovereignty](#) of God is related to his [omnipotence](#), [providence](#), and [kingship](#), yet it also encompasses his *freedom*, and is in keeping with his goodness, righteousness, holiness, and impeccability. It refers to God being in complete control as he directs all things — no person, organization, government or any other force can stop God from executing his purpose.

This attribute has been particularly emphasized in [Calvinism](#). The Calvinist writer [A. W. Pink](#) appeals to [Isaiah 46:10](#) ("My purpose will stand, and I will do all that I please") and argues, "Subject to none, influenced by none, absolutely independent; God does as He pleases, only as He pleases always as He pleases."<sup>[45]</sup>

## TRANSCENDENCE

God's [transcendence](#) means that he is outside space and time, and therefore eternal and unable to be changed by forces within the universe. It is thus closely related to God's *immutability*, and is contrasted with his *immanence*. A significant verse which balances God's transcendence and his immanence is [Isaiah 57:15](#):

For this is what the high and exalted One says — he who lives forever, whose name is holy: "I live in a high and holy place, but also with the one who is contrite and lowly in spirit, to revive the spirit of the lowly and to revive the heart of the contrite."



The [Shield of the Trinity](#) diagram symbolizing aspects of the doctrine of the [Trinity](#).

## TRINITY

The [Trinity](#) of God refers to him being three in one. God is understood to be a unity of [Father](#), [Son](#), and the [Holy Spirit](#). Support for the doctrine of the Trinity comes from such places as the New Testament's [trinitarian formulae](#), such as the [Great Commission](#) of [Matthew 28:19](#), "Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit". [First John 5:7](#) (of the [KJV](#)) reads "...there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost, and these three are one", but this [Comma Johanneum](#) is almost universally rejected as a Latin corruption.

## VERACITY

The [veracity](#) of God means his truth-telling. [Titus 1:2](#) refers to "God, who does not lie." Among [evangelicals](#), God's veracity is often regarded as the basis of the doctrine of [biblical inerrancy](#). [Greg Bahnsen](#) says,

Only with an inerrant autograph can we avoid attributing error to the God of truth. An error in the original would be attributable to God Himself, because He, in the pages of Scripture, takes responsibility for the very words of the biblical authors. Errors in copies, however, are the sole responsibility of the scribes involved, in which case God's veracity is not impugned.

## WRATH

Moses praises the wrath of God in Exodus 15:7. Later in Deuteronomy 9, after the incident of The Golden Calf, Moses describes how: "I feared the furious anger of the LORD, which turned him against you, would drive him to destroy you. But again he listened to me." (9:19). In Psalm 69:24, the psalmist begs God to "consume" his enemies "with your burning anger".

In the New Testament, Jesus says in John 3:36, "Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life; whoever does not obey the Son shall not see life, but the wrath of God remains on him."

Wayne Grudem suggests that "if God loves all that is right and good, and all that conforms to his moral character, then it should not be surprising that he would hate everything that is opposed to his moral character."

## **THE BIBLE – BIBLIOLOGY**

- The doctrine of the Bible is the most important of all, because all that we know about God and His works comes from the bible.
- Our belief in the other major doctrines is determined by our belief in the Bible.

### **THE NATURE OF THE BIBLE**

#### **Revelation**

The Bible was received through REVELATION

- Revelation is the process by which God has made Himself known to men.
- God revealed or unveil a true knowledge of Himself, His works, and His will through the Bible. Again, God reveals the true identity of man or who man really is through the Bible.
  
- Revelation takes three facts into consideration:
  1. That God exists
  2. That God can be known
  3. That God communicates to men
  
- Revelation falls into two basic topics:
  - General Revelation
  - Special Revelation
  
- We get to understand the Bible through general revelation (God's creation, man and history) and special revelation (Jesus Christ).

#### **GENERAL REVELATION**

- This is God making Himself known through nature or creation
  - Psalm 19:1-6
  - Rom. 1:18-21
- God making Himself known in man or through man's conscience.
  - Rom. 2:13-16
  - Eccl. 3:11
- God making Himself known in history.
  - Acts 17:24-28
  - Dan. 2:19-21

General revelation is non-silent of which God speaks to men or makes Himself known. Hence:

- It's Non-verbal
- It proves God's existence
- It holds men accountable for wrong doing



- It doesn't lead to salvation
- It can be argued
- It reveals God through the works of His hands

### **SPECIAL REVELATION**

It is whereby God has revealed Himself through:

1. The Living Word – Jesus Christ
  - a. John 1:14-18
  - b. John 14:6-9
  - c. Heb. 1:1-3
  
2. Written Word – The Bible (Logos)
  - a. 2Tim. 3:15-17
  - b. John 5:39-40
  
3. The Rhema Word – God's Spoken Word for you
  - a. 2Pet. 1:20-21
  - b. Exodus 4:22
  - c. Exodus 5:1

Special revelation is God making Himself known personally as Savior and Lord.

- Special revelation is verbal – spoken or written
- Special revelation gives understanding of God and how to walk with Him.
- Special revelation makes men personally responsible for sin.
- Special revelation is sufficient to lead men to salvation.
- Special revelation demands a response: accept or reject.
- God's revelation is complete in the Bible.
- None-other book shall ever be written again.
- The Bible as we have it today is God's final document for mankind.

### **Doctrine of the Bible**

- The Bible deals with God's self-revelation in written form. In the Bible, god has explained to man who He is, what He is like, and what He requires of man.

### **The Bible Defined**

- The Bible is defined as God's divine progressive written revelation of who God is, and who man is, and how man can walk with God and God with man.

## THE BIBLE AS GOD'S WORD

- The Bible itself claims that it is the Word of God. When God speaks men ought to listen. And God has spoken in His Word, the Bible. Therefore, if the Bible is actually God's Word, it should influence our belief about God.
- God's revelation as revealed in the Bible to man is sufficient
  - Matt. 15:3-9
  - Col. 1:25
  - 1Thess. 2:13

## ORIGIN OF THE BIBLE

These three concepts define the origin of the Bible or where it came from.

1. Revelation
2. Inspiration
3. Inerrancy
4. Infallible
5. Authority
6. Illumination
7. Preferred method to study the Bible: Systematic study or Expository method
8. Interpretation

(1) Revelation had already been discussed in detail above

## (2) INSPIRATION

- Inspiration simply means God-breathed or sourced in God. it refers to:
  - Divine source – where God's Words came from (2Tim. 3:16).
  - Human agents – Holy Spirit used human agents to write the Words without suppressing or overpowering their personalities (2Pet. 1:20-21).
  - Holy Spirit directing or overseeing the process (2Pet. 1:20-21).
  - Verbal revelation – the Words were inspired, while the authors were filled and directed by the Holy Spirit. The text did not say the men were inspired but the Words. Read these texts carefully: 2Tim. 3:16; 2Pet. 1:20-21).
  - All Scripture is inspired not part (2tim. 3:16).
  - God did not mechanically dictate the Words to the writers. There might be difference in style, word choice, and human personalities of the authors, but their God-given free will was not violated.

**(3) INERRANCY**

- Inerrancy simply means that the Bible is without error as originally given by God.
- Inerrancy is limited to the words of the original manuscripts, not to subsequent copies or current translations.
- The Bible is inerrant because it's God inspired. And since it's God's Word, it must be without error because God cannot lie.
- If you believe the Bible has errors, then one of these two things is true:
- Either the Bible is not God's Word.
- Or God does not tell the truth.

**(4) INFALLIBLE**

- It has the same meaning with inerrancy at first, but today it has changed.
- Infallible has come to be used today by those who deny inerrancy.
- They claim that the Bible speaks correctly on matters of salvation and faith, but contains minor errors on matters related to man, history, geography, science and the like.
- Liberal scholars belong to this category; for they claim that Genesis chapters 1-11 are not literally true but only myth (fable) and legend. They do this to discredit God's Word and an accommodation of human ideas.

**NB: "Either all of God's Word is true or none of it is true." Dr. Dennis Mock**

**(5) AUTHORITY**

- Authority refers to the right and power of God's Word as:
- Trustworthy, dependable and objective standard of truth by which everything is measured.
- A determinant for right belief and correct behavior for the church.
- That which constitute the only reliable source of knowledge of God and man's spiritual growth.
- The authority of God's Word is higher than any human traditions, church dogmas or teachings and human opinions.
- All world views, human traditions and cultural practices are measured against God's Word.
  - Matt. 5:43-44
  - Matt. 15:1-9

**(6) ILLUMINATION**

- Illumination simply means to enlighten; to gain more insight and understanding.
- Illumination refers to the ministry of the Holy Spirit in enabling believers to understand Scripture and accept it as truth.
  - 1Cor. 2:12-14

- Eph. 1:17-19
- Illumination deals with understanding, accepting and applying the Word as God's truth (Luke 24:45; Mark 4:34).
- Illumination deals with insight into the meaning of Scripture (2Tim. 2:7).
- Illumination deals with growing into maturity.

#### **(7) Preferred method to study the Bible: Systematic study or Expository method**

- Systematic Bible study or refers to orderly, logical procedure or approach for studying the Bible to determine its meaning and apply or obey the truths taught.
- Expository preaching is the result of systematic Bible study and how the truths of Scripture are presented.
- This is done through a principle known as exegesis – digging deep to discover the root meaning of Scripture.
- Therefore, systematic study is knowing the truth, while expository preaching is preaching the truth known, centered on the text of Scripture.
- Systematic study is not a one-time activity, but a life time program.
- Systematic study and Expository preaching are both not **eisegesis**.
- Again, **exegesis** is seeking or going deep to know the truth, while **eisegesis** is reading into Scripture or imposing what we believe to be true in the Scripture on others. Or it is reading your own mind into Scripture; thus, making suggestions for the Scriptures.

#### **(8) INTERPRETATION**

- It involves understanding Scripture and its meaning as to how it was originally written.
- It includes the original meaning of the author to his readers.
- What did the author mean by what he said?
- Hermeneutics is the technical name given to the rules of interpretation (Acts 8:30-35).
- Rules of interpreting the Bible includes:
  1. Observation
  2. Interpretation
  3. Application
- And Methods of Bible study includes:
  1. Biographical (character study)
  2. Topical (Word or subject study)
  3. Doctrinal (Theological)
  4. Devotional (personal nourishment)

## **Methods of Systematic study or Rules of interpretation**

Effective Bible study is done by following certain basic rules of how to interpret the Bible.

1. Observe the text
2. Interpret the text
3. Apply the text

### **Observation or observe the text**

Means examine, search or inspect the text carefully.

Question to ask: What does it say? (Acts 17:11)

### **Interpretation or interpret the text**

Question to ask: What does it mean? (Acts 8:30-35)

### **Application or apply the text**

It means respond to and obey the truth stated in the text.

Question to ask: What shall I do? Acts 22:8-10

### **Step 1 Observation**

- What does the text say?
- What do I see?
- What are you looking for?

### **Answer:**

- Focus on the text
- Know what is there and what is not there
- For example:
- How many wise men (magi) came? Matt. 2:1-2. Not mentioned yet it is known that there were three wise men. Where did that information come from? A clear example of eisegesis.
- Where will the final destiny of unbelievers be? The noted conception is "Hell." But it's the lake of fire (Rev. 20:14-15).
- The final resting place for believers is not only heaven. It's new heaven and new earth (2Pet. 3:10-13; Rev. 21:1).

### **In observation, you can easily fall into these mistakes:**

- Failing to see the details.
- Seeing what is not in the text.
- Not reading carefully.
- Assuming you already know what it says.
- All the above can make you reach the wrong conclusion.

**Therefore:**

- Read carefully
- Read repeatedly
- Read patiently
- Read prayerfully
- Read purposefully
- Read inquisitively

**For effective systematic Bible study, ask yourself the right questions such as:**

- Who is talking?
- Who is being talked about?
- What is the subject or topic being discussed?
- What comes before or what follows after the topic under discussion?
- Where is the activity or discussion taking place?
- Why is the activity or discussion taking place? Or what is the purpose?
- How are the people involved responding?

**Assignment**

Read Luke 17:11-19

Answer as many questions as you can:

Who?

What?

Where?

When?

Why?

How?

How does your view of Scripture affect your study, preaching and teaching of the Word?

How can the apparent conflict in 2Sam. 24:1 and 1Chron. 21:1 be reconciled?

How can you prove that the Bible is authentic Word of God?

Are there conflicts in the biblical text?

**What to look for**

1. Words
2. Structure
3. Atmosphere
4. Literary form

## Words

Look for important key words or phrases

## Structure

- Look to see how the passage is constructed or arranged.
- See how the passage is composed or put together.
- Look for people – biographical (Gen. 12-50) about Abraham, Isaac, Jacob and Joseph.
- Places – geographical
- Times – Chronological (1 and 2 Kings)

## Atmosphere

- Atmosphere is the underlying tone, mood or spirit and the emotional response which the passage cause.
- Atmosphere has to do with the “feel” of a passage.
- Put yourself in the passage in order to identify with the emotions of the original readers.

Examples:

Doubt – Mark 16:9-14

Joy – Ezra 3:10-13

Fear – Exodus 20:18-21

Majesty – Isaiah 6:1-5

Anger – Number 16:12-15

Thanksgiving – 1Tim. 1:12-17

Praise – Psalm 150

Awe – Luke 17:11-17

Sadness – Luke 8:49-52

Surprise – Matt. 19:7-10

## Literary Form

This deals with the literature of the Bible or the context in which the Bible was written namely:

1. Narrative
2. Discourse
3. Poetry
4. prophetic

## **NARRATIVE**

- This is designed to convey history in the form of facts, stories, parables, accounts and biographies.
- Sometimes demonstrates how God relates to people and nations.
- It reveals evidence of the law of sowing and reaping – David.
- It discloses character development – Joseph
- Character deterioration – Samson
- Books such as Genesis, Exodus, Numbers, 1 Samuel, and Acts among others are examples of narrative.

## **DISCOURSE**

- It's a form of spoken language designed to present ideas, concepts, doctrine, facts in a logical or orderly manner. It could often be in the form of argument, letter writing, lecture, sermon or speech.
- It appeals to the mind and intellect.
- It shows progression and development of thoughts.
- It often includes exhortation and commands.
- Usually leads to the challenge to obey or act.

Examples include:

- Parts of Deuteronomy
- Parts of Leviticus
- Romans
- Ephesians
- Hebrews
- Matthew 5-7

## **POETRY**

- It involves the expression of emotions, feelings, and ideas as a means of conveying truth.
- It uses figurative, descriptive and symbolic language to create mental images.
- Highly emotional – evokes feelings.
- Uses parallels, contrast, and reinforcement.
- It teaches truth by using figures of speech.

Examples include

- Job
- Psalms
- Proverbs
- Ecclesiastes
- Song of Solomon
- Prophets including parts of Isaiah



## PROPHETIC

- Involves the use of symbolic language to uncover or reveal that which was previously unknown.
- Uses highly figurative or symbolic language but still conveys the truth.
- It usually includes predictive prophecy about the future.
- It often has visions which require careful interpretation.

Examples include

- Isaiah
- Jeremiah
- Ezekiel
- Daniel
- Malachi
- revelation

## STEP 2 INTERPRETATION

- Interpretation is the means or the process by which the meaning and message of a biblical text is determined and understood.
- Interpret the text – what does it mean?
- Before you can apply and obey God's Word, step 3 interpretation, you must know what it says (step 1 – observation and understand what it means – step 2 interpretation).

Some key questions

- What does it mean? Acts 8:30-31
- What is the importance of this? Rom 9:10-13
- Why did God include this? Rom. 8:28
- What is the purpose of this passage? 1Cor. 6:1-8

NB: Know what the text says (observation), then you are prepared to determine what it means (interpretation), and how to finally apply it (application).

## General rules of Interpretation

### Interpret in context

- Interpret each passage or verse in context of Scripture noting where it is located in Scripture, what precedes it, what follows after it, and how it is related to other Scriptures.

- 1Cor. 7:1 – If you read this verse itself, you will reach the wrong conclusion about God’s view of marriage. You should read the rest of 1Cor. 7 in order to get the full meaning. Refer to Matt. 19:1-11.
- James 2:14 – If you read this verse alone, you will reach the wrong conclusion that good works can save a man. Read all the way back to verse 14 and forward to verse 26 in order to grasp the whole context.
- The context of each verse of the Bible is the Bible itself.
- Think forward and backward, and through the book.
- As you read, try to discover:
  - The basic theme or purpose
  - Main divisions
  - Important people
  - Significant events
  - Comparisons
  - Repetitions
  - Doctrinal ideas
  - Common elements
  - Climaxes

#### **Interpret in view of history and culture**

- Interpret each verse or passage of Scripture in view of its historical and cultural setting or background.
- Consider the following:
  - Author
  - Date of writing
  - Place of writing
  - Reason for writing
  - Readers
  - Political
  - Economic
  - Social
  - Religious
  - Legal
  - Ethical
- Discovering the historical situation will assist you in understanding the meaning of the passage.
- Cultural setting in the church at Corinth
- The veil distinguished women in the church from prostitutes and was a sign of submission to authority.

Culture is what people:

- Believe
- Say
- Do
- Wear
- Eat
- Make
- Practice and how they think or process information.

Guidelines for determining whether a passage is culturally bound today or applicable today.

- What was the purpose of the cultural practice or teaching?
- Would that cultural practice have the same significance today?
- If not, is there a timeless principle that could be practiced today but in different way?

### **Interpret in view of other parts of Scripture**

- Interpret each verse or passage in view of related or similar passages in the same or other books of the Bible.
- Similar or related passages will often help us understand and apply the truth of the Bible.
- John 4:14 against John 7:38-39
- John 16:33 against 1John 5:4-5

### **Figures of speech**

- Simile – a comparison using like or as. For example: “All men are like grass.” 1Pet. 1:24
- Metaphor – a comparison where one thing represents another. For example: “You are the salt of the world.” Matt. 5:13. “Tongue also is a fire.” James 3:6
- Personification – giving human characteristics to objects, ideas, or animals. For example: “The trees of the field will clap their hands.” Isaiah 55:12
- Anthropomorphism – ascribing human characteristics to God. for example: “The hand of God was upon us.” Ezra 8:31
- Symbols – a symbol is a word or phrase which stands for or represents something else. The purpose is to make clearer.
- For example:
  - Jesus Christ – Lamb, Lion, Rock, Branch, Root, Stumbling Stone.
  - Holy Spirit as Water, oil, wind, dove
  - Cloud or Fire – God’s presence, guidance

- Dragon or serpent – Satan
- Horn – strength
- Keys – authority

### **Step 3 – Application**

- Apply the text.
- Questions to ask:
  - What shall I do?
  - How does it work?
  - How can I put this into practice?

You are wasting your time if you read and study Scriptures but don't intend to obey it. Studying God's Word is not the goal but only a means to the goal. The goal is becoming mature in Christ.

- James 1:22-25
- Like 6:46-49
- John 13:17 – respond to and obey the truth
- Heb. 5:14 – we train our minds by constant use of scripture.

### **Results of not obeying God's Word**

- You deceive yourself into believing that knowing is enough.
- You will not grow into spiritual maturity.
- You will not retain what you don't practice.
- You cannot effectively teach or preach what you have not practiced yourself.
- You will contradict what you say. What you do speaks louder than what you say.

### **To apply or obey the text**

- Never attempt application before observation and interpretation.
- Make a conscious effort to obey without emotions.
- Obedience must be complete not partial.
- Rely on the power of the Holy Spirit to obey not yourself.

### **To understand application – ask yourself the following questions**

- Is there a principle to apply?
- Is there a command to obey?
- Is there a sin to confess and forsake or repent of?
- Is there a habit to change or stop?
- Is there an attitude to correct?
- Is there a truth to believe?
- Is there a promise to claim?
- Is there an example to follow?
- Is there an area to surrender to God?

- Is there a specific action to take?
- Is there a condition to meet?
- Is there a person to forgive?
- Is there a danger or error to avoid?
- Is there a change to make in my character, conduct or conversation?

**NB: Credit – Dr. Dennis J. Mock: Rules of Interpretation and Bible Study Methods**

## **The Challenge to Acquire sound Biblical Interpretation Principles**

### **30 Essential Truths about the Bible**

- Before we start, know that What we believe about the Bible is critically important
1. The Bible is divine in origin
  2. It is supernatural, progressive revelation of who God is and who man (2 Tim. 3:16)
  3. The Bible is a unique collection of 66 Books
  4. The Bible was written by about 40 human authors under the direction of the Holy Spirit (2 Pet. 1:20-21)
  5. The Bible is unified in all its parts and will never contradict itself (Psalm 119:160)
  6. The Old Testament alone was written over a period of 1000 years
  7. The NT was also written over a period of 50 years
  8. The original Scriptures were carefully copied by hand by Hebrew scribes and passed along from generation to generation
  9. The Old Testament was written primarily in Hebrew with short portions in Aramaic while the New Testament was predominantly written in Greek
  10. By the time of Christ, the OT was complete as one book containing the books we have today
  11. The first important translation of the Hebrew OT was the Greek Septuagint which was completed around 250BC
  12. The Bible is inspired and without error and authoritative (Psalm 18:30)
  13. The second important translation of the OT was the Latin Vulgate which became the official Bible of Christianity for about 1000 years
  14. The first English version of the Bible was made around 1384 by John Wycliffe
  15. It was followed by 200 years by the 1611 King James authorized version
  16. The Dead Sea Scrolls found in Qumram in 1947 conclusively confirmed the accuracy and unity of the OT Scriptures as we have it today
  17. The OT has been miraculously preserved by God for well over 3000 years
  18. In the OT, Law was external while it was internal in the NT
  19. In the OT, relationship to God was through the Priest while in the NT, we have close personal relationship to God
  20. In the OT, provision for sin was temporal, while in the NT, it was permanent

21. In the OT, obedience demonstrates faith, while in the NT, faith is demonstrated by obedience
22. The OT ended with Christ's death, while the NT began with Christ's death
23. The OT begins God's revelation, while the NT completes God's revelation
24. All the 27 books of the NT were recognized as inspired by the Church Council of Carthage in AD 397
25. The OT predicts Christ as Messiah, while the NT presents Christ as Messiah
26. The OT requires faith for salvation, and the NT also requires faith for salvation
27. The OT requires living by faith, and the NT also requires living by faith
28. The OT predicts God's prophetic plan, while the NT presents God's prophetic plan
29. The NT is concealed in the OT; while the OT is revealed in the NT
30. The OT is not complete without the NT, while the NT is not understandable without the OT

### **Essential Attitudes for Effective Bible Interpretation**

#### **You need to know the 4Ds**

##### **Desire; Decide; Determine and Depend**

1. Desire to know and understand God's word (Psalm 119:97-100)
2. Decide to have an open mind to discover what the text says (Psalm 119:169)
3. Determine to obey what you learn (Psalm 119:33-35)
4. Depend on God to teach you what to teach others (Psalm 51:12-13)

#### **Theology of the Old and New Testaments are the same**

1. The God of the OT is the same as the God of the NT (Mal. 3:6 OT; Heb. 13:8 NT)
2. The OT and the NT both reveal that wrath is as much a part of the character of God as is love (Nahum 1:1-3; Zeph. 1:3; Mal. 1:3 OT; Jn. 3:16, John 3:36 NT)
3. Both the OT and the NT reveal that man's basic nature apart from God is the same (Gen. 6:5 OT; Eph. 2:1-3 NT)
4. Walking by faith has always been the only way to please God in the OT and NT (Hab. 2:4; Heb. 11:1-6)
5. Sin is the same in the OT and the NT. It does not contradict (Isaiah 59:2; Rom. 6:12).
6. Salvation by grace through faith has always been the only way to be in a right relationship with God both in the OT and the NT (Gen. 6:8; Gen. 15:6; Eph. 2:8-9).

#### **Methods of Bible Study**

- Apart from expository Bible study, sometimes it is helpful to approach the Bible using other methods of Bible study.

- Other methods of Bible study can be used based on the spiritual needs of the church. Each of the following methods has a particular goal or purpose in view.
- Understand fully what you are trying to accomplish before you use one of these methods.
- We have completed the rules of interpretation already as listed below; we now turn on the methods of Bible study.

### **Rules of interpreting the Bible include**

1. Observation
2. Interpretation
3. Application

### **And Methods of Bible study include**

1. Biographical (character study)
2. Topical (Word or subject study)
3. Doctrinal (Theological)
4. Devotional (personal nourishment)

### **Biographical method**

- The biographical study seeks to discover what the Bible says about life, life, ministry, and personal character of a particular person.
- The goal of character study is to know both good and bad qualities the person possesses.
- It's to know whether the person's life was a success or failure.
- The aspects of the person's to be followed or avoided.
- How to apply your life and that of the church to character studied.

### **Steps to follow**

- Choose the person you want to study.
- For some people in the Bible, there would be great deal of information. For example: Joseph, David, Paul or Peter.
- For some characters there would be a few references. For example: Adam, Noah, Luke or Stephen.
- Some characters may be mentioned all through scripture. for example: Abraham.
- Read Bible references for that person's character and the insight given. For example, 2Pet. 2:5-7 gives insight on Lot that Genesis 19:1-36 does not.
- Decide on limits of your study, whether to use the Old Testament, or New Testament, or some chapters, or the entire Bible.

### **Application – Ask yourself the following questions:**

- What main lesson does the life of that person teach or illustrate?

- What influence did good or bad character qualities had in their life and ministry?
- What Bible truths, principles or concepts can be identified from their life?
- What personal applications can I make to my life or my congregation from this biographical study?

### **Topical Method or Doctrinal Method**

- This method seeks to determine what the Bible or part of the Bible says about a particular word or subject, including an idea or concept.
- The theological or doctrinal method of study is also basically a topical method.
- The goal is to learn what the word or subject means.
- The goal is to know how different parts of the bible use that word or subject.
- The goal is to know what spiritual principles come from the study.

### **Doctrinal Method**

- Refer to the Bible doctrines for detailed subjects.
- The goal is to learn what the Bible or part of the Bible teaches about God, man and the created order.
- The goal is to learn the foundational truths or doctrines of the Christian faith.
- How to put correct doctrinal truths into appropriate daily behavior.
- How to apply the results of the topical and doctrinal study.

### **Steps to follow**

1. Choose the word or subject or doctrine you want to study in view of real felt needs.
2. Decide if it is desirable to limit your study to a particular chapter or book, or the OT or NT or the entire Bible.
3. Compile a list of words: Faith, trust, doubt, unbelief. Money, wealth, riches, poverty, poor.
4. Use Bible concordance to a list of the references you find for the word or related words.
5. In preparing a topical message: be accurate, be complete, be clear. Try to work results into expository message.

### **Devotional Method**

- The devotional method seeks to study the Bible for personal spiritual nourishment and enrichment for one's personal walk with God.
- The goal is to learn how to develop regular quiet time with God.
- The goal is to learn how to appropriate and apply more of God's Word.
- The goal is to learn how to properly respond to God in worship, praise, thanksgiving, service, dependence and obedience.



- The goal is to learn how to grow more intimately in our relationship to God as we spend time with Him in prayer and His Word.
- The goal is to let God speak to us through His Word.
- The goal is to learn how to more fully appreciate God for who He is.

**Steps to follow:**

- Set aside a specific period of time 30 minutes to 1 hour for devotional study.
- Pray for insight and understanding in the Word
- 2Tim. 2:7
- 1Cor. 2:12-15
  - Col. 1:9-14
  - Heb. 4:12-13
- Select passages of Scripture from few verses to no more than a chapter. Remember that all of God's Word is profitable.
- Read the passage quickly. Re-read it slowly and carefully. Meditate on the passage.
- You can choose a devotional book like THE SEER or OUR DAILY BREAB as your devotional book.
- Ask God to show you one main insight or truth for this passage. Reflect on the insight.
- Ask yourself:
  - How does this insight apply to me?
  - What response does this insight call for?
- Pray for God to enable you through the power of His indwelling Holy Spirit to respond properly and act on this passage.
- Thank God for what He has shown you and the spiritual nourishment you have received. And pray for those the Spirit directs you to pray for.
- Record your insight so you can share it with others later. You may also use this insight later for preaching or teaching.

**NB: CREDIT Dr. Dennis J. Mock: Rules of Interpretation and Methods of Bible Study**

**VARIOUS VIEWS OF THE BIBLE**

**(1) LIBERALISM**

Liberalism holds that:

1. The Bible is a fallible product of human authors. Thus, human beings wrote the Bible with mistakes.
2. The Bible contains a record of men's thoughts about God.

3. The supernatural miracle of the Bible cannot be accepted as truth.
4. The truth of the Bible is subject to the test of human reason and experience.
5. Whatever truth in the Bible is subjective and relative, and not objective or absolute.
6. The Bible is not divine supernatural revelation from God.
7. Man himself, not God, is the final authority on truth.
8. God may only be something we feel or experience.

Men like Immanuel Kant (1724-1804) and Frederick Schleiermacher (1768-1834) were major contributors to the liberal movement.

Liberalism exalts human reason and denies the supernatural.

## **(2) NEO-ORTHODOXY**

Neo-orthodoxy generally holds that:

1. While the Bible may contain the Word of God, it is not the Word of God but only a fallible human witness to Christ.
2. Christ is the Word of God but only as one experiences Him in a personal encounter.
3. God's revelation of Himself comes only through personally experiencing Him, not through the Bible.
4. The truth of the Bible is relative and subjective. Relative truth means what may be the truth to you may not be the truth to me. And subjective truth means truth is not absolute.

Thus, neo-orthodoxy has a low view of Scripture and a high view of man's subjective experience.

The principal founder of the movement was Karl Barth (1886-1968).

## **ROMAN CATHOLICISM**

This view holds that the traditions and interpretive views of the church about the Bible have the same authority and value as the Bible itself. Thus, the Bible teaches what the Church says it teaches.

### **Conservative, Evangelical Orthodox View**

- Our biblical view holds that
- The Bible is God's divine, supernatural revelation of Himself.
- The inerrant words of the Bible are inspired by God and therefore authoritative.
- The Bible is God's objective absolute truth by which everything else can be tested.
- The Bible is not subjective or relative.
- While the Bible should be carefully and intelligently studied, its truth and accuracy does not depend on human reason or experience.

The Bible is either God's flawless Word to men or it's men's flawed words about God it cannot be both.

## HOLY SPIRIT - PNEUMATOLOGY

### In Christ Jesus

In Christ alone we receive the Holy Spirit:

- Luke 24:49 And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high.
- Matt. 3:11 I indeed baptize you with water unto repentance: but he that cometh after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost, and *with* fire:
- John 15:26 But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, *even* the Spirit of truth, which proceeds from the Father, he shall testify of me:
- John 16:13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.

### 8 REASONS WHY YOU HAVE TO BE ANOINTED

1. The Holy Spirit comes with the Anointing
2. The Anointing stands for the Power of God
3. Because even the Messiah was anointed
4. Luke 4:18 The Spirit of the Lord *is* upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised.

### JESUS CHRIST AFTER THE 40 DAYS

- Luke 4:14 And Jesus returned in the power of the Spirit into Galilee: and there went out a fame of him through all the region round about.
- Luke 4:15 And he taught in their synagogues, being glorified of all.
- 5. **Even Jesus was anointed though He was God**
- Act 10:38 How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.
- 6. **Because we cannot do ministry in human strength**
- Zech. 4:6 Then he answered and spake unto me, saying, This *is* the word of the LORD unto Zerubbabel, saying, Not by might, nor by power, but by my spirit, saith the LORD of hosts.
- 7. **Because even the apostles needed to wait**
- Luke 24:49 And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high.

### 8. **Because even Elijah was anointed**

- 2Kings 2:9 And it came to pass, when they were gone over, that Elijah said unto Elisha, Ask what I shall do for thee, before I be taken away from thee. And Elisha said, I pray thee, let a double portion of thy spirit be upon me.

### 9. **The Anointing is difficult to Receive**

- 2Kings 2:10 And he said, Thou hast asked a hard thing: *nevertheless*, if thou seme *when I am* taken from thee, it shall be so unto thee; but if not, it shall not be so. **Saul, the first king of Israel was anointed (1 Sam. 10:1, 6)**
- **1Sam. 10:1** Then Samuel took a vial of oil, and poured *it* upon his head, and kissed him, and said, *Is it* not because the LORD hath anointed thee *to be* captain over his inheritance?
- 1Sam. 10:6 And the Spirit of the LORD will come upon thee, and thou shalt prophesy with them, and shalt be turned into another man.

### 11. **David was also anointed: He killed the lion, bear, Goliath, and won many wars**

- 1Sam. 16:1 And the LORD said unto Samuel, How long wilt thou mourn for Saul, seeing I have rejected him from reigning over Israel? fill thine horn with oil, and go, I will send thee to Jesse the Bethlehemite: for I have provided me a king among his sons.
- 1Sam. 16:13 Then Samuel took the horn of oil, and anointed him in the midst of his brethren: and the Spirit of the LORD came upon David from that day forward. So Samuel rose up, and went to Ramah.
- 1Sam. 17:36 Thy servant slew both the lion and the bear: and this uncircumcised Philistine shall be as one of them, seeing he hath defied the armies of the living God.

### 12. **Moses could not have done it without the anointing**

- Num. 11:17 And I will come down and talk with thee there: and I will take of the spirit which *is* upon thee, and will put *it* upon them; and they shall bear the burden of the people with thee, that thou bear *it* not thyself alone.
- Num. 11:25 And the LORD came down in a cloud, and spake unto him, and took of the spirit that *was* upon him, and gave *it* unto the seventy elders: and it came to pass, *that*, when the spirit rested upon them, they prophesied, and did not cease.
- **Desire the anointing**
- It is difficult to get the anointing!
- Moses waited for 40 years until he encountered God at the edge of the wilderness (Exodus 3:1-4).
- Moses fasted 40 days on two occasions to get it (Exodus 24:28; 34:28)
- Elijah fasted 40 days without food and het the qualification to go to heaven without physical death (1 Kings 19:8)

- John did not eat or drink and he attracted the most hardened in Palestine (Matt. 11:18)
- Jesus Christ was the Son of God, yet he fasted for 40 days and nights without food. He afterward returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to Galilee and news about him spread throughout the region (Luke 4:1-2, 14)

## **15 MEANINGS OF THE ANOINTING**

- First know what the Anointing stands for:
  1. It is the infilling of the Holy Spirit
  2. The Power of God
  3. The Hand of God
  4. The Spirit Upon
  5. The Spirit without Measure
  6. The Spirit of Elijah
  7. The Mosaic Measure
  8. The Double Portion
  9. The anointing comes with several powerful changes
  10. It stands for great grace (Acts 4:33)
  11. It stands for great power (Acts 4:33)
  12. It stands for people holding you in high regard (Acts 5:13)
  13. It stands for fruitfulness (Acts 5:14)
  14. It stands for God's presence (Acts 5:15-16)
  15. It stands for the seven Spirits of God (Isaiah 11:2)

## **WHAT THE ANOINTING CAN DO**

1. It takes the anointing to break the yoke and burden of Assyria (Isaiah 10:27).
2. The anointing makes the anointed commander over the LORD'S inheritance; It makes the anointed takes control over situations (1 Sam. 10:1).
3. The anointing brings total to the anointed (1 Sam. 10:1, 6, 9).
4. The anointing releases the Spirit of the LORD in power upon the anointed (1 Sam. 10:6).
5. The anointing releases the prophetic unction upon the anointed. Saul started to prophecy for the first time (1 Sam. 10:6, 11).
6. The anointing will make you do what you haven't done before. Saul prophesied. An experience unknown to him (1 Sam. 10:6).
7. The anointing takes people by surprise "Is Saul, the son of Kish also among the prophets?" (1 Sam. 10:11)
8. The anointing makes you a man of action.
  1. It destroys mediocrity and self-pity.
  2. "Do whatever your hand finds to do" (1 Sam. 10:7).
9. The anointing comes with the presence of the LORD (1 Sam. 10:7).

10. The anointing makes the anointed moves at the right time (11 Sam. 10:8).
11. The anointing brings holy anger (1 Sam. 11:6).
12. The anointing comes with the Spirit of the LORD in power upon the anointed (1 Sam. 16:13).
13. The anointing can remain upon the anointed always (1 Sam. 16:13).
14. The anointing gives the anointed command over talents (1 Sam. 16:18).
15. The anointing makes the anointed a brave man and a warrior for the LORD (1 Sam. 16:18).
16. The anointing makes the anointed a good public speaker – motivational speaker (1 Sam. 16:18).
17. Demons cannot stand before the anointing (1 Sam. 16:23).
18. Performance under the anointing increases (From killing bear to lion, then to Goliath (1 Sam. 17:34-36).
19. The anointing makes the anointed runs faster than lions (1 Sam. 17:34-36)
20. No lion can run away with your sheep, property (1 Sam. 17:34-36).
21. The anointing makes ordinary things extraordinary. It turns ordinary men into extraordinary (1 Sam. 17:50).
22. The anointing brings favor to the anointed before people in high positions
23. Thus the anointing opens greater doors of opportunities (1 Sam. 18:1-4).
24. The anointing makes the anointed liked by great men (1 Sam. 18:5).
25. The anointing grants the anointed favor before the masses (1 Sam. 18:6-7).
26. The anointing raises new enemies and makes closer friends jealous the anointed (1 Sam. 18:8-9).
27. The anointing provides destiny helpers (Psalm 89:19).
28. The anointing makes the anointed mighty (Psalm 89:19).
29. The anointing raises the anointed into new levels in ministry (Psalm 89:19).
30. The anointing establishes the anointed (Psalm 89:20).
31. The anointed is supported by the arm of God (Psalm 89:21).
32. The anointing delivers the anointed from afflictions (Psalm 89:22).
33. The anointing makes God crush the enemies of the anointed (Psalm 89:23).
34. The anointing helps the anointed to maintain the loving kindness of the LORD (Psalm 89:24).
35. The anointing exalts the horn of the anointed (Psalm 89:24).
36. The anointing brings international expansion and recognition (Psalm 89:25).
37. The anointing grants the anointed the capacity to have closer walk with God as Father and son (Psalm 89:26-27).
38. The anointing makes the anointed precious. It rates him higher than the kings of the earth (Psalm 89:27).

39. The anointing establishes a covenant between the anointed and God. Covenants are uncommon agreements which cover a limited few. The anointed becomes one of the few which have that covenant relationship with God (Psalm 89:28).
  40. The anointing affects the descendants of the anointed forever. They are established in righteousness and taught by the LORD (Psalm 89:29).
  41. The anointing grants the anointed a permanent and long lasting ministry. Longevity affects all that the anointed does (Psalm 89:36-37).
  42. The anointing paves way for the Spirit of the LORD to rest upon the anointed (Isaiah 61:1).
  43. The anointing grants the anointed the enablement to heal the broken hearted. The broken hearted are those in trouble of any kind and deeply distressed (Isaiah 61:1).
  44. The anointing grants the anointed the enablement to preach the Gospel to the poor (Isaiah 61:1).
  45. The anointing grants the anointed the power to speak liberty to the captives (Isaiah 61:1).
  46. The anointing grants authority to the anointed to open prison doors to the bound or to set the oppressed free (Isaiah 61:1).
  47. The anointing gives the anointed the capacity to restore the site of the blind (Luke 4:18).
- 
46. The anointing gives capacity to the anointed to preach the acceptable year of the LORD (Luke 4:19).
  47. The anointing is a gateway to the Trinitarian anointing. It is [1] The Spirit [2] of The LORD GOD [3] Upon Me refers to The Messiah (Isaiah 61:1; Luke 4:18-19).
  48. The anointing ushers the anointed into the realm to operate with the Spirit without measure. It is the unlimited anointing which enables the receiver to handle any department of the ministry with ease (John 3:34).
  49. The anointing enables the anointed to go round doing good, and to heal the oppressed (Acts 10:38).
  50. The anointing makes the anointed a carrier of the presence of the LORD (Acts 10:38).

#### **40 WAYS TO KNOW YOU ARE ANOINTED**

1. When you don't entertain self-pity and mediocrity (Gen. 12:1-3)
2. When you develop the will power over fear and failure, and always aim at excellence (Gen. 12:1-3).
3. When you develop the will power to expand your vision (2 kings 6:1-7).
4. When you develop the confidence to take up new territories (1 Chron. 4:9-10).
5. When you develop the determination to achieve results even under very difficult circumstances (Exodus 1:8-12).

6. When you have the capacity to overcome new challenges (1 Sam. 17:31-33).
7. When you easily go round preaching the good news and ministering to the poor (Isaiah 61:1)
8. When you begin to heal the oppressed (Acts 10:38).
9. When you begin to minister inner healing to the broken hearted (Isaiah 61:1).
10. When you begin to practice consistent healing (Acts 10:38).
11. When you develop the capacity to destroy the works of the devil (1 John 3:8).
12. When you develop the will to be like Jesus (1 John 3:2).
13. When you develop practicing inner healing to the broken hearted (Isaiah 61:1).
14. When you begin to do whatever your hands find (1 Sam. 10:7).
15. When others see the changes in your life by turning into a different man (1 Sam. 10:6).
16. When difficult challenges become easier (1 Sam. 17:36-37).
17. When you begin to do what you have not done before (1 Sam. 17:54).
18. When your meditations become a reality and make you successful wherever you go (Josh. 1:6-9).
19. When your decrees become established (Job 22:28).
20. When you begin to increase abundantly against the background of a humble beginning (Job 8:7).
21. When you begin to develop self-confidence as never before (Josh. 1:6).
22. When you begin to see increase and unprecedented multiplication in ministry (Acts 4:4).
23. When you begin to become very courageous without fear of threats (Acts 4:13; 5:29).
24. When you begin to preach with wisdom, knowledge, knowhow surpassing that of your observers (Acts 4:13).
25. When you begin to perform continuous signs and wonders (Acts 5:12).
26. When you begin to enjoy absolute peace and unity in the ministry (Acts 5:12).
27. When people begin to highly esteem and respect you (Acts 5:13).
28. When the ministry begins to attain worldwide significance and impact (Acts 5:14).
29. When the sick and the troubled including the possessed are healed or delivered without a touch of human hand (Acts 5:15).
30. When your life begins to attract persecution as a result of the exploit recorded in your ministry (Acts 5:17-20; 26-29).
31. When your enemies begin to fight for you in critical times (Acts 5:33-34, 38-40).
32. When the word of the Lord begins to spread through your ministry (Acts 6:6-7).
33. When you become irresistible in wisdom and in spirit by what you speak (Acts 6:10).
34. When you lay hands on people and they receive the Holy Spirit (Acts 8:14-17).
35. When your ministry serves as an open door for other ministries (Acts 9:10-18).



36. When you speak, and the Holy Spirit begins to perform wonders in the lives of your hearers (Acts 10:44-48).
37. When even your aprons bring healing to the afflicted (Acts 19:11-12).
38. When you begin to experience the ministry of raising the dead (Acts 9:36-37; 40-42).
39. When you still live even after you have died long ago (2 Kings 14:20-21).
40. When you begin to operate in the power ministry of your immediate mentor (2 Kings 2:13-14).

### **WHAT THE INFILLING IS NOT**

1. It is not like water poured into the vacuum of your hungry heart to fill it
2. It is not hypocritical prayer
3. It is not blowing your trumpet about how much you are doing for the LORD
4. It is not about how big your congregation is although it leads to multiplication of members
5. It is not a license to gain undue popularity
6. It is not a license to undermine authority and colleague ministers
7. It is not a license to win the hearts of the congregation
8. It is not a license to start a personal church
9. It is not a license to take undue advantage over fellow ministers
10. It is not being classified as the richest pastor in town although it could be
11. It is not frequent overseas travels although it could be
12. It is not fortune telling with familiar spirits or the spirit of divination
13. It is not miracles with lying wonders

It is not prophecies throughout without the word of God

### **WHAT IS THE INFILLING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

#### **• In the Old Testament**

1. First, know that the term "Infilling of the Holy Spirit" is not an Old Testament terminology; it is a New Testament phrase. But, it does the same work.
2. It is the Spirit of the LORD coming upon somebody in power (Isaiah 61:1-2)
3. It is the seven Spirits of God (Isaiah 11:2)
  - The Spirit upon
  - The Spirit of wisdom
  - The Spirit of understanding
  - The Spirit of Counsel
  - The Spirit of might
  - The Spirit of knowledge
  - It is the fear of the LORD
4. It is the power of God upon the anointed (Judges 14:5)

5. It is the hand of God upon somebody (Ezra 7:6, 26)
6. It is the outpouring of the Spirit (Joel 2:28-32)
7. The Spirit which came upon Saul (1Sam. 10:1, 5-7)
8. It is the anointing with oil (1Sam. 16:1)
9. It was the “Unceasing Anointing” which came upon David (1Sam. 16:13)
10. It was the hand of the LORD upon the Prophet Ezekiel (Ezek. 37:1)
11. It was the grace or favor upon the life of Esther (Esth. 2:17)
12. It is the presence of the LORD (Gen. 39:1-5)
13. It is the Spirit of God in Joseph (Gen. 41:37-41)
14. It is the “Another Spirit” in Caleb (Num. 14:24)
15. The Spirit in Joshua (Num. 27:18; Deut. 34:9)

### **DIFFERENT MEASURES OF THE SPIRIT IN THE OLD TESTAMENT**

9. The Mosaic Portion (Num. 11:17, 25)
10. Mosaic portion divided into 71 portions (Num. 11:16-17, 25-29)
11. Elijah’s Portion ((2Kings 2:9)
12. The Double Portion (2Kings 2:-10)
13. The Spirit of Elijah on John The Baptist (Luke 1:15-17)
14. Levels of infilling experienced by Prophet Ezekiel (Num. 11:23; Ezek. 47:3-5)
  - Ankle level (walking, more work than the anointing)
  - Knee level (praying more than the Spirit working)
  - Waist level (where children are born, ministries and visions are born)
  - Chest level (overflow of the Spirit; the Spirit control you; the anointing takes and drives you; less efforts and more of the Spirit)

### **WHAT IS THE INFILLING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

1. It is the Spirit of the LORD coming upon the believer in power
2. It is the outpouring of the Spirit (Joel 2:28-32)
3. It is the Spirit filling the believer or the Holy Spirit taking total control of the believer
4. It is walking in the Spirit
5. It is living in the Spirit
6. It is the power of God upon the believer
7. It is the hand of God upon the believer (Ezra 7:6, 26)
8. It is the unction to function or the ability to perform (Luke 24:49; Acts 1:8)
9. It is the anointing or the oil (1Sam. 16:1)
10. It is the grace or favor of God upon the believer (Esth. 2:17)
11. It is the presence of the LORD
12. It is the seven Spirits of God (Isaiah 11:2)
13. It is the fear of the LORD (Isaiah 11:2)

14. It is prayer of faith (praying with few words) John 11:41-43
15. It is praying with results (John 11:44)
16. It is doing greater works for the LORD (Matt. 14:28-29)
17. It is to hate sin (Job 1:1-2)

### **THE SPIRIT STANDS FOR:**

1. The Power of God
2. The Hand of God
3. The Spirit Upon or Power of the Spirit
4. The Spirit without Measure
5. The Spirit of Elijah
6. The Mosaic Measure
7. The Double Portion
8. It is the Anointing
9. The anointing comes with several powerful effects. No one can tell the exact effects the anointing produces in the life of the leader or believer. Nonetheless, for now, the following effects have been provided for the sake of our teaching.
10. It stands for great grace (Acts 4:33)
11. It stands for great power (Acts 4:33)
12. It stands for people holding you in high regard (Acts 5:13)
13. It stands for fruitfulness (Acts 5:14)
14. It stands for God's presence (Acts 5:15-16)

### **WHAT THE INFILLING CAN DO**

1. It breaks traditions: Tradition is the normal way of doing things: It is what is acceptable by all (David ate showbread (Mark 2:25-26)
2. It breaks protocols (Peter walked on the sea (Matt. 14:29)
3. Jesus said "Come" (no need to rattle many words) [Matt. 14:29]
4. It makes you go beyond average Peter preached and 5,000 got saved (Acts 4:4)
5. It makes you excel (Dan. 1:20)
6. It makes you skillful (1Sam. 16:16-18)
7. It breaks traditions: Tradition is the normal way of doing things: It is what is acceptable by all (David ate showbread (Mark 2:25-26)
8. It breaks protocols (Peter walked on the sea (Matt. 14:29)
9. It makes you hit at the exact target (1Sam. 17:49)
10. It brings the presence of the LORD (1Sam. 16:18)
11. It makes you follow the LORD to the end
12. It makes you see visions (Ezek. 1:1, 8:3)

13. It makes you different (Dan. 1:8)
14. It makes you determined (Dan. 1:8)
15. It makes you incomparable (Dan. 1:14-15)
16. It makes you know what you did not know (Dan. 1:17)
17. It makes you a champion (Dan. 1:19)
18. It breaks traditions – tradition is the normal way of doing things: It is what is acceptable by all (David ate showbread (Mark 2:25-26)
19. It breaks protocols (Peter walked on the sea (Matt. 14:29)
20. Jesus said “Come” (no need to rattle many words) [Matt. 14:29]
21. It makes you go beyond average Peter preached and 5,000 got saved (Acts 4:4)
22. It makes you excel (Dan. 1:20)
23. It makes you skillful (1Sam. 17)
24. It makes you hit at the exact target
25. It brings the presence of the LORD
26. It makes you follow the LORD to the end
27. It makes you see visions
28. It makes you different (Dan. 1:8)
29. It makes you determined (Dan. 1:8)
30. It makes you incomparable (Dan. 1:14-15)

## **NATURE AND PERSON OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

### **HIS DEITY**

1. He is Co-equal with the Father and the Son (Matt. 28:19)
2. He is another counselor like the Son (John 14:16-17)
3. They are all shared in the Trinitarian Grace (2Cor. 13:14)
4. The voice of the Spirit is the voice of God (Heb. 10:15-17)
5. The holy Spirit is referred to as God (Acts 5:3-4)

### **CHARACTERISTICS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

1. He is eternal (Heb. 9:14)
2. He is omnipotence – all powerful (Rom. 8:11)
3. He is omnipresent – everywhere at the same time (Psalm 139:7-12)
4. He is omniscience – all knowing (1Cor. 2:10-11)
5. He is truth (John 14:16-17)
6. He is love (Rom. 5:5)
7. He is life (John 6:63)

### **HIS TITLES**

Titles of the Spirit make Him God

1. Spirit of holiness (Rom. 1:4)

2. Spirit of the Lord (Luke 4:18)
3. Spirit of Christ (Rom. 8:9)
4. Spirit of Jesus (Acts 16:7)
5. Spirit of your father (Matt. 10:20)
6. Spirit of the loving God (2Cor. 3:3)

### **SYMBOLS OF THE SPIRIT**

His symbols reveal His nature and work

1. Oil (1Sam. 16:13; Acts 10:38; 1John 2:20, 27)
2. Living waters (John 4:14; John 7:38-39)
3. Fire (Matt. 3:11-12)
4. Guarantee of our salvation (Eph. 1:13-14)
5. Seal or security (2Cor. 1:22)
6. Clothing (Luke 24:49)
7. Power (Acts 1:8)
8. Dove (John 1:32-34)
9. Fruit (Gal. 5:22-23)

### **WHERE THE HOLY SPIRIT CAME FROM**

- The Holy Spirit eternally proceeds from the Father and the Son
- Thus He was sent forth from the Father and the Son to the world on the day of Pentecost
- John 14:15-17
- John 15:26
- John 16:7
- Gal. 4:4-6

He was sent to this world to:

1. Empower the work of the church (Luke 24:48-49)
2. To baptize believers into the body of Christ (Acts 1:5-8)
3. To convict the world of sin (John 16:7-11)

### **THE PERSONHOOD OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

- He is identified with the power of God, yet not a force but a person.
- He is the third person of the Trinity

The New Testament meaning of the Holy Spirit

- One who comes alongside to help or to provide support.
1. As counselor (John 14:16)
  2. As comforter (John 14:26; John 15:26)
  3. As consoler (John 16:7)

4. As advocate – lawyer (1John 2:1)
5. As prayer partner (Rom. 8:26)
6. As intercessor (Rom. 8:27)

### **PROOF THAT THE HOLY SPIRIT IS A PERSON**

- The Holy Spirit is referred to in Scripture by the use of the masculine personal pronoun “He” even “spirit” is neuter gender (John 16:13-14; John 14:16).
- He has
  1. A mind (Rom. 8:270)
  2. A will (1Cor. 12:11)
  3. Emotions (Eph. 4:20)
  4. He speaks (John 15:26)
  5. He prays (Rom. 8:26-27)
  6. He guides (John 16:13)
  7. He hears (John 16:13)
  8. He shows things yet to come – a prophet (John 16:13)
  9. He glorifies Christ (John 16:14)
  10. He receives (John 16:14)
  11. He teaches (1Cor. 2:13)
  12. He leads (Rom. 8:14)
  13. He inspired the writings of the Scriptures (2Tim. 3:16)
  14. He inspired the writers of Scripture (2Pet. 1:21)

The Holy Spirit can be:

- Lied to (Acts 5:3)
- Grieved (Eph. 4:30)
- Insulted (Heb. 10:29)
- Resisted (Acts 7:51)
- Quenched (1Thess. 5:19)

### **HIS WORK IN CREATION**

The Holy Spirit was actively involved in

- Creation of the universe (Gen. 1:2; Job 33:3)
- Creation of man (Gen. 2:7)
- Sustaining creation (Psalm 104:29-30)

### **ANOINTING AND EMPOWERING MEN**

- Moses (Numb. 11:24-25)
- The 70 Elders (Numb. 11: 24-30)

- Othniel Judges 3:10-11)
- Gideon (Judges 6:33-34)
- Samson (Judges 14:5-6)
- Saul (1Sam. 10:1, 6)
- David (1Sam. 16:13)
- Joseph (Gen. 41:38)
- Joshua (Num. 27:18)
- Daniel (Dan. 5:11)

### **THE OLD TESTAMENT MINISTRY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

- In the Old Testament, the Spirit is said to “Come upon” and empower men temporary for example Samson.
- Samson experienced the power of the Spirit on different occasions
- Judges 14:5-6
- Judges 15:14-15
- The Spirit came upon Saul in power for war (1Sam. 11:6)
- But the Spirit also departed from Saul (1Sam. 16:14)
- The Spirit came upon David from that day forward (1Sam. 16:13)
- But he later prayed that God should not take His Spirit from him (Psalm 51:11)

### **HOLY SPIRIT MINISTRY IN THE NEW TESTAMENT**

- The New Testament talks about the Holy Spirit residing permanently in you.
- 1Cor. 6:19
- 1Cor. 3:16
- The New Testament talk about the Holy Spirit being with you and in you
- John 14:17
- Regular empowerment
- Acts 1:8
- Continuous infilling
- Eph. 8:18
- Acts 2:4
- Acts 4:8, 31
- Enablement (Gal. 5:16-18, 22-25)

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT AND WORK OF INSPIRATION**

- He enabled men to speak for God
- Spoke through Samuel (1Sam. 3:21)
- Spoke through David (2Sam. 23:1-2)

- Spoke through Elijah (1Kings 17:1-2)
- Spoke through Micah (Micah 3:8)
- Spoke through other Old Testaments prophets
- Matt. 22:43-44
- Acts 1:16
- Heb. 1:1-2
- Holy Spirit inspired Scripture (2Tim. 3:16)
- He guided, directed, and influenced the human writers of the Old and New Testament (2Pet. 1:20-21)
- John 14:26; John 16:13-14

### **WORK OF THE HOLY SPIRIT IN THE LIFE OF CHRIST**

- His virgin birth
  - Matt. 1:18-20
  - Luke 1:35-37
- Holy Spirit empowered Jesus
- He anointed Jesus (Luke 3:21-22)
- He led Jesus into the wilderness (Luke 4:1-2)
- He empowered Jesus for ministry (Luke 4:14-15, 18)
- Jesus relied on the power of the Holy Spirit
- Matt. 12:28
- Luke 5:17-18
- Acts 2:22
- Acts 10:38

### **IN THE ATONING DEATH OF CHRIST**

The Spirit was involved in the atoning death of Christ

- Heb. 9:14

In His resurrection

- Rom. 1:4
- Rom. 8:11
- 1Pet. 3:18
- Holy Spirit in the New Testament

The Work of the Holy Spirit

The work of the Holy Spirit was important in the book of Acts.

- He filled the apostles for empowerment and spreading the Gospel.
- Acts 1:8



## **ON THE DAY OF PENTECOST**

- The Holy Spirit was sent by the Father to the world for the first time after the resurrection of Christ.
- Acts 2:1-4
- It came to fulfill the prophecy of Joel
- Joel 2:28-29
- It came to fulfill the promise of Christ by the Father
- Luke 24:49
- John 16:7
- Acts 1:4-5
- The infilling of the Holy Spirit came with speaking in tongues (Acts 2:11; 1Cor. 14:22).
- Speaking in tongues refers to foreign languages unknown to the speakers but known to the hearers.
- The tongues validated God's supernatural work, the preaching of the apostles, and credibility to their message.
- 1Cor. 14:21-22
- Acts 2:6-8
- Infilling was a continuous process in the book of Acts
- They were all filled (Acts 2:4)
- Peter was filled (Acts 4:8)
- All of them were filled (Acts 4:31)
- Stephen was filled (Acts 7:55)
- Paul was filled (Acts 9:17)
- Saul also known as Paul was filled (Acts 13:9)

## **GIVING THE HOLY SPIRIT IN THE BOOK OF ACTS**

### **The Jews**

1. Holy Spirit came by divine means
2. Holy Spirit given to Jews at Pentecost (Acts 2:1, 4).
3. It was characterized by speaking in tongues and preaching (Acts 2:4, 13).
4. They first believed, were saved, and the Holy Spirit came afterwards.

### **The Samaritans**

5. The Samaritans first believed the Word, baptized and received the Holy Spirit (Acts 8:16)
6. Holy Spirit given through the laying on of hands by Peter and John (Acts 8:14-17)
7. Familiar spirits are cunning (Acts 8:18-23)

### **The Gentiles**

1. Cornelius was a Gentile (Acts 10:1-8)
2. The Holy Spirit came by supernatural means. No hands were laid (Acts 10:4-4-45)
3. It was characterized by the speaking in tongues and exalting God (Acts 10:46).
4. The Gentiles first believed, received the Holy Spirit before they were baptized (Acts 10:47-48).
5. The spiritual blessing as promised to Abraham by God was being demonstrated here (Gen. 12:3).

### **The Gentiles in Ephesus**

1. Given at salvation (Acts 19:2)
2. Holy Spirit given through Paul (Acts 19:6-7)
3. Characterized by tongues and prophecy (Acts 19:7)

### **The Work of the Holy Spirit**

- The baptism of the Holy Spirit is the same as receiving the Holy Spirit.
- Matt. 3:11
- Acts 8:14-17
- The Holy Spirit baptized believers into the body of Christ.
- The believer is identified with the death, burial and resurrection of Christ (Rom. 6:1-4).
- The Holy Spirit places the believer into the Body Christ to become the member of the church (1Cor. 12:13).
- The Holy Spirit is the brain behind the spiritual gifts (1Cor. 12:7-12).
- Different kinds of gifts can be operated in one church by the Holy Spirit (1Cor. 12:27-30).
- A major characteristic of The Holy Spirit is its enablement of bold witnessing for Christ.
- Acts 1:8
- Acts 4:8
- Acts 4:31
- The reason the Holy Spirit performs miracles is to:
  - Display the power of God
  - Glorify God
  - To cause men to believe in God
- Acts 3:1-9
- Acts 5:12-16
- The Holy Spirit empowered men for ministry (Acts 13:1).

- The Holy Spirit set men apart for missionary work (Acts 13:2-5).
- The Holy Spirit filled men for effective ministry.
- Acts 6:1-4
- He directed, influenced and directed men for missions.
- Acts 11:22-24
- Acts 13:1-5
- The Holy Spirit determines, distributes and develops spiritual gifts for ministry and to build up the church (1Cor. 12:1-11).
- The Holy Spirit spoke through the prophets, and still speaks today (Acts 11:27-28).
- Lying to the Holy Spirit comes with severe judgment (Acts 5:1-11).
- The Holy Spirit is the voice in ministry and missions (Acts 16:6).
- The Holy Spirit:
  - Founded the church
  - Developed the church
  - Expanded the church
  - Empowered the church
- What the Holy Spirit did in the church from 37AD-100AD can still be done in the church today.

### **THE PRESENT MINISTRY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

- The Holy Spirit is still at work today as He was in the days of the apostles and the early church.
- Some claim certain spiritual gifts have ceased. That is not the true picture. If certain gifts are not prevalent in these days does not mean they have ceased working. You don't know what the Holy Spirit is doing in a certain remote place in far Mongolia.
- The writer doesn't hold to the view that certain gifts have ceased from operation.

The Holy Spirit is involved in

- Convicting people – thus declaring people guilty
- Of sin
- Of judgment
- And of righteousness
- John 16:8-11
- The Holy Spirit convinces unbelievers of their lostness and need to be saved.
- Acts 16:13-15
- The Holy Spirit glorifies Christ (John 16:13-14)

The ministry of the Holy Spirit in the church

- He empowers the church to preach Christ
  - Acts 1:8
  - Luke 14:46-49

- 1Cor. 2:1-5
- Baptizing believers to receive fire and power and make them part of the church
- Acts 1:4-5
- Matt. 3:11-12
- 1Cor. 12:13
- The Holy Spirit brings unity into the body of Christ (Eph. 4:3-4).
- The Holy Spirit makes fellowship easy and possible among believers (Phil. 2:1).
- The Holy Spirit enables spiritual growth in the Church (Col. 1:28-29).
- The Holy Spirit changes the life of the gospel preachers. He gives boldness to preach Christ (Acts 4:13).

#### The work of the Holy Spirit to individuals

- He regenerates, saves and gives new birth in the believer.
- John 3:3-8; 1John 1:12-13; Titus 3:5
- He cleanses and purifies from sin (Rom. 8:13-14)
- The Holy Spirit identifies believers with Christ
  - Rom. 6:3-4
  - Col. 2:12
- The Holy Spirit sanctifies believers – He sets them apart and makes them holy
  - 2Thess. 2:13
  - Rom. 15:16
- The Holy Spirit cleanses and purifies believers from sin
  - Rom. 2:29
  - Rom. 8:13-14
- The Holy Spirit indwells permanently in the believer. Unlike the Old Testament, He comes upon and takes a temporal residence in people.
  - John 3:34; John 14:17; 1Cor. 6:19; 1Cor. 3:16
- The Holy Spirit seals and guarantees salvation. All believers have their salvation protected by the Holy Spirit until the second coming of Christ.
  - Eph. 1:13-14
  - Eph. 4:30
  - 2Cor. 1:21-22
- The Holy Spirit offers assurance of salvation. He gives inner testimony that we are God's children.
  - Rom. 8:16
  - John 1:12-13
- The Holy Spirit fills, directs, controls, influences, and grants enablement to believers who have surrounded their life to Him (Eph. 5:18; Acts 2:4; Acts 4:8; Acts 4:3).
- The Holy Spirit produces Christ-like nature and fruit in the believer. He gives the mind the mind of Christ.

- Phil. 2:5
  - Gal. 5:16, 22-25
  - Gal. 6:7-8
  - The Holy Spirit illuminates the mind of the believer to easily understand the things of God.
    - 1Cor. 2:10-15
    - 1John 2:20, 27
  - The Holy Spirit prays and intercedes for the believer according to the will of God. He helps in times of weaknesses.
    - Rom. 8:26-27
    - Eph. 6:18
  - The Holy Spirit is able to discern right spirit from false spirit.
    - 1John 4:1-14
  - The Holy Spirit leads and guides believers
    - Rom. 8:14
  - The Holy Spirit teaches believers the truth of God's Word to believers.
    - John 16:12-15
- Differences or distinctions between Spirit baptism, Spirit infilling and Spirit indwelling.
- The Holy Spirit works in three unique areas in the life of the believer.

### **SPIRIT BAPTISM**

- It's an event which occurs at salvation.
- It places the believer in the body of Christ.
- It may or may not be accompanied by signs
- 1Cor. 12:13 Matt. 3:11; Acts 1:4-5

### **SPIRIT INFILLING**

- Infilling of the Spirit occurs when the believer yields control of his life to God and allows the indwelling Spirit to direct, guide, influence, enable and empower the believer in obedience to Christ.
- It can be temporal, consistent or always.
- No matter how a believer is filled by the by Spirit, he cannot get more of the Spirit, but can allow the Spirit to get more of him.
- Acts 2:4; Acts 4:8; Acts 4:31; Eph. 5:18

### **SPIRIT INDWELLING**

- All believers from the moment of salvation are permanently and totally indwelt by the Holy Spirit who lives in them.
  - John 14:17

– 1Cor. 3:16; 6:19

## **HANDLING THE SPIRITUAL GIFTS**

The Holy Spirit works in an atmosphere of love and forgiveness

1. Spiritual gift is not maturity
2. Spiritual gift does not make you holier than all
3. Spiritual gift is not to show your power
4. Spiritual gift is not for you alone (Luke 9:49-50)
5. Spiritual gift is not to destroy enemies (Luke 9:51-55)
6. Good relationship is better than sacrifice (Matt. 5:23-24)
7. It takes maturity to forgive enemies (Matt. 5:43-48)
8. Forgiveness is good for you (Matt. 6:14-15)
9. Jesus forgave humanity (Luke 23:33-36)
10. The criminal had instant access to heaven (Luke 23:39-43)
11. False prophets are known by their fruits (Matt. 7:13-20)
12. Miracles don't grant access to heaven
13. False prophets perform miracles (Matt. 7:21-23)
14. Disobedience destroys (1Sam. 13:8-14)
15. Obedience is better than sacrifice (1Sam. 15:13-23)

How to avoid grieving the Holy Spirit

- Put on the new man (Ephesians 4:24-26)
- Don't give place to the devil (Ephesians 4:27-29)
- Grieve not the Spirit (Ephesians 4:30-32)

## **USE THE MIND OF CHRIST TO HANDLE SPIRITUAL GIFTS**

1. The greatest person (Matt. 7:12)
2. To move by the Spirit, you need to have the mind of Christ (Phil. 2:5).
3. God's rule: That none should perish (2Pet. 3:9)
4. Spiritual gifts without love is useless (1Cor. 13:1-3)
5. Qualities of love (1Cor. 13:4-7)
6. Love never fails (1Cor. 13:8)
7. Knowledge and prophecy are not all (1Cor. 13:9-10)
8. Put away the childish things (1Cor. 13:11)
9. Love is the greatest gift (1Cor. 13:13)
10. Whoever loves is born of God (1John 4:7-21)

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT AND FAMILIAR SPIRIT**

- They are very similar
- Difficult to identify which one is at work
- The people of Samaria saw Simon, the magician's power as God's power (Acts 8:10)
- Simon the magician used this power to deceive the people yet they did not realize until the apostles came.
- Those who use the occult or familiar spirit take the glory to themselves (Acts 8:9).
- Familiar spirit can deceive and draw people to themselves (Acts 8:11)
- The Holy Spirit can break the power of the occult and bring people to Christ (Acts 8:12-13)

### **BELIEVERS AND FAMILIAR SPIRITS**

- Peter spoke through God's revelation
- Matt. 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.
- Matt. 16:17 And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed *it* unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven.
- Matt. 16:18 And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.
- Matt. 16:19 And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.
- Matt. 16:20 Then charged he his disciples that they should tell no man that he was Jesus the Christ.

### **FAMILIAR SPIRIT SPOKE THROUGH PETER**

- Matt. 16:21 From that time forth began Jesus to shew unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day.
- Matt. 16:22 Then Peter took him, and began to rebuke him, saying, Be it far from thee, Lord: this shall not be unto thee.
- Matt. 16:23 But he turned, and said unto Peter, Get thee behind me, Satan: thou art an offence unto me: for thou savourest not the things that be of God, but those that be of men.
- The eleven did not realize Peter was under the control of familiar spirit but Jesus knew it.
- Peter himself did not realize he was under the control of a familiar spirit

### PAUL AND HIS TEAM ENCOUNTERED A FAMILIAR SPIRIT AT LYSTRA

- They had an encounter with a young lady who was possessed with a spirit of fortune telling, divination or familiar spirit.
- She followed Paul and his team, crying after them that they were servants of the most High God
- She did this for many days
- It took many days for Paul to discern to know the exact spirit using the damsel
- Acts 16:16-18
- The case of Barjesus, or Elymas, the sorcerer, a false prophet was perverting the ways of God
- Acts 16:6-13

### The two sides (Mark 4:35)

- Mark 5:1 And they came over **unto the other side** of the sea, into the country of the Gadarenes.

### THE DEMON AT GADARA

- Mark 5:2-3 And when he was come out of the ship, immediately there met him out of the tombs a man with an unclean spirit,
- Mark 5:3 Who had *his* dwelling among the tombs; and no man could bind him, no, not with chains:

### INCREASING CHALLENGES

- The condition of the demoniac at Gadara
  - Mark 5:4 Because that he had been often bound with fetters and chains, and the chains had been plucked asunder by him, and the fetters broken in pieces: neither could any *man* tame him.
  - Mark 5:5 And always, night and day, he was in the mountains, and in the tombs, crying, and cutting himself with stones.
- The demons operated under familiar spirits.
- The demons saw what the Pharisees and high priests were unable to see.
- This man with unclean spirit run, from afar to worship Jesus. It's the work of familiar spirits. They can act like under the influence of the Holy Spirit. They are very deceptive.
- The familiar spirits know Jesus Christ is the Son of the Most-High God. They can know this through the power of divination.
- The familiar spirits knew Jesus can torment them. How did they know? It's through the power of divination.



- Mark 5:6 But when he saw Jesus afar off, he ran and worshipped him,
- Mark 5:7 And cried with a loud voice, and said, what have I to do with thee, Jesus, *thou* Son of the Most-High God? I adjure thee by God, that thou torment me not.

#### **The demons knew Jesus can cast them out**

- Mark 5:12 And all the devils besought him, saying, send us into the swine, that we may enter into them.

#### **Again – words of Jesus have power**

- Mark 5:13 And forthwith Jesus gave them leave. And the unclean spirits went out, and entered into the swine: and the herd ran violently down a steep place into the sea, (they were about two thousand;) and were choked in the sea.

#### **In his right mind – mind controls everything**

- Mark 5:15 And they come to Jesus, and see him that was possessed with the devil, and had the legion, sitting, and clothed, and in his right mind: and they were afraid.

#### **We make decisions under right mind**

- Mark 5:18 And when he was come into the ship, he that had been possessed with the devil prayed him that he might be with him.

#### **Jesus commissioned the mad man**

- Mark 5:19 Howbeit Jesus suffered him not, but saith unto him, Go home to thy friends, and tell them how great things the Lord hath done for thee, and hath had compassion on thee.

#### **“A great preacher” hidden in the mad man**

- Mark 5:20 And he departed, and began to publish in Decapolis how great things Jesus had done for him: and all *men* did marvel.

#### **Simon the Magician**

- Acts 8:9 But there was a certain man, called Simon, which beforetime in the same city used sorcery, and bewitched the people of Samaria, giving out that himself was some great one:

#### **The Samaritans thought Simon used God’s power**

- Simon rather used familiar spirits.
- The people saw him as one using God’s power.

- Acts 8:10 To whom they all gave heed, from the least to the greatest, saying, this man is the great power of God.

Familiar spirits draw attention to users

Familiar spirits use sorceries to bewitch people

- Acts 8:11 And to him they had regard, because that of long time he had bewitched them with sorceries.
- Acts 8:12 But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.
- Users of familiar spirits can fake to be believers but they are not.
- Simon the magician knew Philip was using genuine power of God.
- Acts 8:13 Then Simon himself believed also: and when he was baptized, he continued with Philip, and wondered, beholding the miracles and signs which were done.
- Acts 8:17 Then laid they *their* hands on them, and they received the Holy Ghost.

Familiar spirit users are money conscious people

- Acts 8:18 And when Simon saw that through laying on of the apostles' hands the Holy Ghost was given, he offered them money,

They want to be at the center stage

- Acts 8:19 Saying, Give me also this power, that on whomsoever I lay hands, he may receive the Holy Ghost.

Spirit filled pastors hate money

- Acts 8:20 But Peter said unto him, Thy money perish with thee, because thou hast thought that the gift of God may be purchased with money.

Their heart not right

- Acts 8:21 Thou hast neither part nor lot in this matter: for thy heart is not right in the sight of God.
- Familiar spirits can prophecy – show dreams

They can repent

- Acts 8:22 Repent therefore of this thy wickedness, and pray God, if perhaps the thought of thine heart may be forgiven thee.

They are deep in sin

- Acts 8:23 For I perceive that thou art in the gall of bitterness, and *in* the bond of iniquity.

### **Satan can appear as angel of light**

- 2Cor. 11:14 And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.

Satan's ministers can be ministers of righteousness and they can appear as angels of light to deceive people.

- 2Cor. 11:15 Therefore *it is* no great thing if his ministers also be transformed as the ministers of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their works.

### **ACTIVITIES OF FAMILIAR SPIRITS IN THE OLD TESTAMENT**

- Saul killed them
- Familiar spirits on the same level as wizards (1Sam. 28:3)
- Enquiring from the LORD similar to enquiring from familiar spirits.
- 1Sam. 28:6-7
- Familiar spirits can speak through people. They can impersonate the living and the dead
- 1Sam. 28:8, 11
- Familiar spirits don't know it all (1Sam. 28:8, 13)
- Familiar spirits know your past (1sam. 28:17-18)
- They make predictions into the future and give directions (1Sam. 28:19).
- Saul died as a result of consulting familiar spirit (1Chron. 10:13)

### **400 PROPHETS CONTROLLED BY FAMILIAR SPIRITS**

- They all declare Israel will win the war
  - 1Kings 22:5-6
  - 1Kings 22:11-12
- Micaiah was familiar spirits depend upon information to act
  - 1Kings 22:13-14
- They can be manipulated and controlled by lying spirits
  - 1Kings 22:19-23
- Familiar spirits can be convinced that they are used by the Spirit of God
  - 1Kings 22:24

True prophets know that they know (1Kings 22:25-28)

### **PROPHETS AND FAMILIAR SPIRITS**

The young prophet from Judah spoke by God's Spirit

- 1Kings 13:1 And, behold, there came a man of God out of Judah by the word of the LORD unto Bethel: and Jeroboam stood by the altar to burn incense.
- 1Kings 13:2 And he cried against the altar in the word of the LORD, and said, O altar, altar, thus saith the LORD; Behold, a child shall be born unto the house of

David, Josiah by name; and upon thee shall he offer the priests of the high places that burn incense upon thee, and men's bones shall be burnt upon thee.

- 1Kings 13:3 And he gave a sign the same day, saying, This *is* the sign which the LORD hath spoken; Behold, the altar shall be rent, and the ashes that *are* upon it shall be poured out.
- 1Kings 13:4 And it came to pass, when king Jeroboam heard the saying of the man of God, which had cried against the altar in Bethel, that he put forth his hand from the altar, saying, Lay hold on him. And his hand, which he put forth against him, dried up, so that he could not pull it in again to him.
- 1Kings 13:5 The altar also was rent, and the ashes poured out from the altar, according to the sign which the man of God had given by the word of the LORD.
- 1Kings 13:6 And the king answered and said unto the man of God, Intreat now the face of the LORD thy God, and pray for me, that my hand may be restored me again. And the man of God besought the LORD, and the king's hand was restored him again, and became as *it was* before.
- 1Kings 13:7 And the king said unto the man of God, Come home with me, and refresh thyself, and I will give thee a reward.
- 1Kings 13:8 And the man of God said unto the king, If thou wilt give me half thine house, I will not go in with thee, neither will I eat bread nor drink water in this place:
- 1Kings 13:9 For so was it charged me by the word of the LORD, saying, Eat no bread, nor drink water, nor turn again by the same way that thou camest.
- 1Kings 13:10 So he went another way, and returned not by the way that he came to Bethel.

### **THE OLD PROPHET FROM BETHEL**

- 1Kings 13:11 Now there dwelt an old prophet in Bethel; and his sons came and told him all the works that the man of God had done that day in Bethel: the words which he had spoken unto the king, them they told also to their father.
- 1Kings 13:12 And their father said unto them, What way went he? For his sons had seen what way the man of God went, which came from Judah.
- 1Kings 13:13 And he said unto his sons, Saddle me the ass. So they saddled him the ass: and he rode thereon,
- 1Kings 13:14 And went after the man of God, and found him sitting under an oak: and he said unto him, *Art* thou the man of God that camest from Judah? And he said, I *am*.
- 1Kings 13:15 Then he said unto him, Come home with me, and eat bread.
- 1Kings 13:16 And he said, I may not return with thee, nor go in with thee: neither will I eat bread nor drink water with thee in this place:
- 1Kings 13:17 For it was said to me by the word of the LORD, Thou shalt eat no bread nor drink water there, nor turn again to go by the way that thou camest.

### **FAMILIAR SPIRIT SPOKE THROUGH THE PROPHET FROM BETHEL**

- 1Kings 13:18 He said unto him, I *am* a prophet also as thou *art*; and an angel spake unto me by the word of the LORD, saying, Bring him back with thee into thine house, that he may eat bread and drink water. *But* he lied unto him.

### **THE PROPHET FROM JUDAH DECEIVED BY FAMILIAR SPIRIT**

- He was a prophet, yet he did not realize it was a familiar spirit.
- It's difficult to identify familiar spirits at work
- 1Kings 13:19 So he went back with him, and did eat bread in his house, and drank water.

### **GOD'S SPIRIT SPOKE THROUGH THE PROPHET FROM BETHEL**

- 1Kings 13:20 And it came to pass, as they sat at the table, that the word of the LORD came unto the prophet that brought him back:
- 1Kings 13:21 And he cried unto the man of God that came from Judah, saying, Thus saith the LORD, Forasmuch as thou hast disobeyed the mouth of the LORD, and hast not kept the commandment which the LORD thy God commanded thee,
- 1Kings 13:22 But camest back, and hast eaten bread and drunk water in the place, of the which *the LORD* did say to thee, eat no bread, and drink no water; thy carcass shall not come unto the sepulcher of thy fathers.
- 1Kings 13:23 And it came to pass, after he had eaten bread, and after he had drunk, that he saddled for him the ass, *to wit*, for the prophet whom he had brought back.
- 1Kings 13:24 And when he was gone, a lion met him by the way, and slew him: and his carcass was cast in the way, and the ass stood by it, the lion also stood by the carcass.

## **CHRISTOLOGY**

### The Test – Thought Provoking Questions

1. If Adam had not sinned, would Christ have to die?
2. Is Salvation forever or can be lost?
3. Did Christ continue to suffer after His Resurrection?
4. Did Christ die for all or only for the elect?
5. What is the difference between righteousness and holiness?
6. Difference between justification and sanctification
7. Who killed Jesus? Sin, sinner, Jews, Gentiles, God, Jesus
8. What are the implications if Jesus were not a real man?
9. How could Jesus function as one person in two natures?
10. Why is it important for Jesus to be tempted and not sin?
11. What made Jesus acceptable as God's perfect sacrifice?
12. Was the focus of Jesus' earthly ministry the meeting of physical needs?  
Why or why not?
13. What motivated Christ to come to earth to die since He did not have to?
14. Passion of Christ: Stands for the suffering and Death of Christ

### **THE IDENTITY OF CHRIST**

#### Who is Christ?

- Christ is the Son of God and Son of Man
- He is called the God-Man
- Christ is fully God and fully Man
- Christ is both Divine (God) and Humane (Man)
- Christ is the eternal Son of God
- Christ had no human father
- If Christ has no human father, it means He was sinless

### **THE DEITY OF CHRIST**

- The deity of Christ means He is divine
- It means Christ is the God-Man
- Christianity rises and falls on the deity of Christ
- If Christ is not God, He could not have saved humanity
- This demonstrates from Scriptures that Jesus Christ is God.
- It's supported by the following facts:
  - His pre-existence
  - His eternality
  - His divinity

## **HIS PRE-EXISTENCE**

Jesus existed before His incarnation as a man.

- John 1:1-2, 14
- John 1:30
- Jon 6:38
- John 17:5

## **HIS ETERNALITY**

Not only did Jesus exist before He became a man but He is said to be eternal, which is a characteristic belonging only to God.

- Isaiah 9:6-7
- John 8:58
- Heb. 13:8
- Rev. 1:4-8
- Rev. 22:12-13

## **HIS DIVINITY**

Jesus is fully divine (God).

Jesus and the Father are one in essence (John 10:30).

Jesus was fully God and embodied all of the divine nature and essence.

- Phil. 2:6
- Col. 1:15
- Col. 2:9
- Heb. 1:3

Jesus revealed the nature and characteristic of God to man.

- John 1:14, 18
- John 14:9-11
- Heb. 1:2

Jesus is mentioned as the integral part of the Trinity

- Matt. 28:19
- 2Cor. 13:14

## **CHRIST'S DIRECT CLAIM TO DEITY**

- Christ claimed to be one in nature with the Father (John 10:30)
- The Jews accused Jesus of making Himself God (John 10:31-33)
- The Jews accused Jesus of claiming God as His Father (John 5:18)

**IF CHRIST WERE NOT GOD..**

- Christ claimed that to have seen Him is to have seen the Father (John 14:9)
- This would have been a bold statement to make if Christ were not God

**ONLY GOD COULD BE PRE-EXISTENT**

- Christ claimed to exist before all things (John 8:58)
- Angels were in existent before creation of the world
- Yet Christ was pre-existent before all created things (John 1:1-3)
- Thus He was eternal
- Christ claimed to be the only one who knew the Father (Matt. 11:27)
- Christ claimed equal authority with the Father (Mark 9:27)

Christ said He was “Lord” (John 13:13; Mark 2:28)

- Christ claimed to be able to save men from their sins (Matt. 10:32-33)
- Christ claimed to forgive sins which only God can do (Luke 5:24)
- Christ claimed equality with the Father and the Holy Spirit in the baptismal formula (Matt. 28:18-20)

**INDIRECT CLAIMS BY CHRIST (THE SEVEN I AMS)**

1. Christ claimed to be the Way.. (John 14:6)
2. Christ claimed to be the Bread of Life (Jn. 6:35)
3. Christ claimed to be the Light of the world (Jn. 8:12)
4. Christ claimed to be the Door.. (John 10:7)
5. Christ claimed to be the Good Shepherd (Jn. 10:11)
6. Christ claimed to be the Resurrection (John 11:25)
7. Christ claimed to be the True Vine (John 15:1)

**ONLY CHRIST POSSESSES ALL THE QUALITIES OR CHARACTERISTICS OF GOD**

- Immutability [Unchanging] (Heb. 13:8)
- Eternal (John 1:1-2; 8:58)
- Omnipotent [All Powerful] Rev. 1:8; Matt. 28:19)
- Omniscient [All Knowing] John 2:25; 6:64; 10:15)
- Omnipresent [Everywhere present] Matt. 18:20; 28:20)

**Christ’s sinless life makes Him God**

- Christ never did an act of sin (1 Pet. 2:22)
- Christ never knew sin or had an evil thought (2 Cor. 5:21)

**Christ is Eternal**

- Christ’s Pre-existence indicates He is eternal, for only God is eternal (Jn. 8:58; 1:1-3; 30; 6:38; 1 Cor. 10:1-4)



- He is the Angel of Jehovah (Ex. 3:2-5; 23:21; Josh. 5:13)

### **Christ Does Works That only God can Do**

- Christ created all things (John 1:3)
- Christ sustains the universe (Col. 1:17; Heb. 1:3)
- Christ pardons sin (Luke 5:24)
- Christ raises the dead (John 5:21, 28-29)
- Christ rewards the saints (2 Cor. 5:10)
- Christ judges the world (John 5:22)
- Christ gives (imparts) life (John 5:21)
- Christ controls nature (Matt. 8:26)
- Christ judges the secret motives of men (Matt. 7:22-23)

### **CHRIST'S ACTS EQUAL WITH THE FATHER**

- The Holy Spirit is also called the Spirit of Christ (Acts 16:6-7; 1 John 4:13)
- The Spirit of Christ is the Spirit of God (1 Cor. 2:11; Rom. 8:9, 14)
- Both Christ and His Father abide in the Christian (John 14:23)
- The Gospel is of both God and Christ (Rom. 1:1, 16)
- Both Christ and the Father forgive sin (Col. 2:12-13; 3:13)
- The Church is both known as the Church of Christ and Church of God (Gal. 1:13; Rom. 16:16)

### **CHRIST IS EQUAL WITH THE FATHER IN..**

#### [1] Equal object of Worship with Father SZ

- Both the Son and the Father are worshipped (John 5:23; Luke 24:52; Matt. 28:17)

#### [2] Equal object of Prayer with the Father

- We pray to both the Father and the Son (Acts 7:59; Rev. 22:20; 1 Thess. 3:11; 2 Thess. 2:16)

#### [3] Equal object of Belief with the Father

- We believe in both the Father and the Son (John 14:1)

#### [4] Equal object of Eternal Life with the Father

- Both the Father and the Son impart eternal life (John 17:3)

#### [5] Equal object of Authority and Power with the Father

- All Power and Authority given to the Son (Matt. 28:18)

#### [6] Equal object of Lordship with the Father

- The Son is both Lord & God (John 20:28-29; Phil 2:9-11)S

## **OT QUOTES IN NT WHICH SHOW THAT JEHOVAH OF OT IS CHRIST OF THE NT**

- Jehovah in OT as Christ in NT (Is. 40:3; Matt. 3:3)
- LORD Who saves in OT as Christ in NT (Joel 2:32; Acts 2:21; Rom. 10:13)
- LORD in OT as Christ in NT (Mal. 3:1; Lk 1:76)
- LORD God in OT is the Christ Who ascended on high in the NT (Psalm 68:18; Eph. 4:8)
- LORD Whom every knee will bow in the OT is the Christ of the NT (Is. 45:22-25; Phil. 2:10-11)
- LORD in OT is the Christ Who is revelation to the Gentiles (Isaiah 60:19; Luke 2:32)

## **NT WRITERS ACKNOWLEDGED CHRIST AS GOD**

### **The Apostle John**

- And the Word was God (John 1:1)
- Christ as Almighty (Rev. 1:8)
- Christ as Alpha and Omega (Rev. 21:6-7)
- Christ as the True God (1 John 5:20)

### **The Apostle Paul**

- Our Great God and Savior Jesus Christ (Titus 2:13)

### **The Apostle Thomas**

- My Lord and my God (John 20:28)

### **The Apostle Peter**

- Our God and Savior Jesus Christ

### **The Author of Hebrews**

- God the Father calls His Son by the title God (Heb. 1:8)

### **Jude**

- God equated with the Savior (Jude 1:25; Matt. 1:21)

## **THE NAMES OF GOD FOR CHRIST**

- Savior: A reference to Deliverer from sin (Matt. 1:21)
- Lord: A reference to Deity (Acts 16:31)
- GOD: A reference to His Deity (John 20:22)
- I AM: A reference to Jehovah God (Jn. 8:58)
- Emmanuel: This means God with us (Matt. 1:23)
- Mighty God: Prophetic reference referring to the deity of Christ (Isaiah 9:6)
- Almighty: a reference to His deity (Rev. 1:8)

- Alpha and Omega: A reference to the eternality of Christ (Rev. 1:8)
- Everlasting Father: A reference to His eternality and deity (Isaiah 9:6)

### **THE HUMANITY OF CHRIST**

- The virgin birth underpins the humanity or incarnation of Christ.
- Christ is fully God and fully Man
- It means Christ is as much a man as He is God
- We will never fully understand why Christ is fully man and fully God at the same time while we are in the human body.

### **THE HYPOSTATIC UNION OF CHRIST**

- This doctrine of two natures of Christ in one person is totally accepted by faith.
- The coming together of the divine and human natures of Christ in one person is called the hypostatic union – which means to cause to stand together.
- It means Jesus Christ is true God and true man, having a fully divine nature and a fully human nature inseparably united, (but not confused) in one person forever.
- Christ alone is the God-Man
- Christ is fully God and fully Man, inseparably united, and unconfused forever

### **FOUR CHURCH COUNCILS**

The Early Church struggled with the issue of the relationship between the divine and human natures of Christ.

#### **(1) Council of Nicea 325AD**

ERROR:

Arius claimed that Christ was not eternal but a created being – divine but not God (he denied the full deity of Christ). Not true God!

DECISION

Christ is the same essence and being as the Father but distinct in person.

#### **(2) COUNCIL OF CONSTANTINOPLE 381 AD** (Istanbul in present day Turkey)

ERROR

Apollinarius claimed that Christ had a human body and soul, but a divine spirit. Not true man.

DECISION

Affirmed Nicea and declared Christ as fully human.

**(3) COUNCIL OF EPHESUS 431 AD****ERROR**

Nestorius denied the full deity and union and stated that God could not become flesh; the divinity of Christ was only an appearance – He was a “god-bearer,” Not true God-man.

**DECISION**

Declared the full union of Christ’s human and divine natures in one person.

**(4) COUNCIL OF CHALCEDON AD 451**

Eutyches claimed that the humanity of Christ was swallowed up in His divinity, Christ was only phantom (ghost or spirit). Not true man.

**DECISION**

Affirmed the Orthodox position: Christ was fully God and fully man inseparably united, but unconfused in one person forever. Hypostatic union.

**SOME CONCLUSIONS ABOUT THE HYPOSTATIC UNION**

- Christ always acted as a whole person in response to one of His natures but His divine nature and will was predominant (John 12:27-28).
- Jesus had a divine self-consciousness from childhood
  - Luke 2:46-50
- The divine will of Jesus dominated His human will but was always in submission to the Father.
  - John 6:38
  - Luke 22:41-46
- It is not possible to fully distinguish between Jesus’ divine and human nature on every occasion.
- Since God cannot die, it was the humanity of Christ that died on the cross.
- As a man He experienced physical and spiritual death to redeem humanity.
  - 1Pet. 2:24
  - 1Pet. 3:18
  - Col. 1:22
- As a person He was aware of His spiritual separation from the Father
  - Psalm 22:1
  - Matt. 27:46

- Christ died with what was added to His deity – unglorified humanity. The humanity of Christ was real. His flesh was like ours and yet different in one critical respect – He had no sin nature.
  - Rom. 8:3-4
  - 2Cor. 5:21
  - Rev. 5:6
  
- Christ was resurrected in a glorified body
  - 1Cor. 15:35-54
  - Rom. 6:4

### **THE INCARNATION**

- The incarnation deals with the Virgin Birth of Christ
- Virgin Birth is Christ being born without human father
- The incarnation deals with God becoming man
- The incarnation is when the eternal Son of God became the Son of Man
- Major passages about the humanity of Christ (Phil. 2:6-9; John 1:14; Rom. 1:2-5; 1 Tim. 3:16; Heb. 2:14; 1 John 1:1-3; Gal. 4:4-5)

### **PURPOSE FOR THE INCARNATION**

- For Christ to be a sinless Savior (Mark 10:45)
- For Christ to be a mediator; a mediator must be both God and man (1 Tim. 2:5)
- For Christ to be a High Priest (Hebrews 5-7)
- For Christ to be King (2 Sam. 7:16-19; Matt. 27:37)
- For Christ to be an example (1 Pet. 2:21)
- For Christ to reveal the Father (John 14:9)
- For Christ to destroy the works of the devil (1 Jn. 3:8)
- To provide future resurrection (John 11:24-25)
- To prepare for the 2<sup>nd</sup> advent (Heb. 9:28)

### **CHRIST IN SUFFERING AND DEATH**

#### **Atoning Sufferings**

- It was destined that the Messiah should suffer (Luke 24:24-26)
- The atoning suffering includes Christ bearing the sins of men on the cross (1Pet. 2:23-24)

### After Death Sufferings

- Our Lord still suffers even after the resurrection and ascension.
- In Acts 9:4 our Lord said to Saul, "Saul, why do you persecute me.
- When one member of the body suffers, Christ suffers as the head (1Cor. 12:26)

### IMPORTANCE OF CHRIST'S DEATH

#### Christ's Death is important because:

- It is foretold in the Old Testament (Isaiah 53)
- **Isaiah 53:3** He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief: and we hid as it were *our* faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.
- **Isaiah 53:4** Surely he hath borne our grieves, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.
- **Isaiah 53:5** But he *was* wounded for our transgressions, *he was* bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace *was* upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.
- **Isaiah 53:6** All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned everyone to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

#### And fulfilled in the New Testament

- Luke 24:27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.
- Luke 24:44 And he said unto them, these *are* the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and *in* the prophets, and *in* the psalms, concerning me.
- Luke 24:45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures.
- Christ's death is mentioned 175 times in the NT
- It is the primary purpose of the incarnation (Mark 10:45; Heb.14)
- It is the heart of the Gospel (1 Cor. 15:1-3)

### DESCRIPTION OF CHRIST'S DEATH

1. A substitution: Christ died in place of the sinner; vicarious substitute; done for another; (2 Cor. 5:21)
2. A ransom: The death of Christ paid the price of the penalty for sin (Matt. 20:28)
3. A Ransom: a sum of money demanded or paid for the release of a captive (1 Tim. 2:6)

4. A redemption: The death of Christ purchased men out of the slave market of sin (Eph. 1:7)
5. The action of regaining or gaining possession of something in exchange for payment, or clearing a debt.
6. A reconciliation: The death of Christ changed men from the position of enemy to that of a friend (2 Cor. 5:18-19)
7. A propitiation: Christ's death satisfied the holy and righteous demands of God against sin (1 John 2:2)
8. A demonstration: The death of Christ was a proof of the love of God (Rom. 5:8; John 3:16)

### **POWER OF THE CROSS**

- Christ tasted death for everyone (Heb. 2:9)
- Christ saves to the uttermost (Heb. 7:25)
- Christ preached to the death in prison since the days of Noah (1 Pet. 3:18-22; 4:5-6)
- Christ descended to the lowest parts of the earth and took captivity captive (Eph. 4:7-10)
- Christ delivered us from the devil's kingdom through the cross (Col. 1:13-14)
- Reconciled all things to Himself through the cross (Col. 1:19-20)
- Wiped the hand writing of requirements against us (Col. 2:13-15)
- Temple veil torn into two on the cross paving way for the new order of worship (Lk. 23:44-46)

### **CHRIST IN RESURRECTION**

- Resurrection means rising from the dead
- It refers only to the body because neither the soul nor the spirit can die

### **EVIDENCE OF CHRIST'S RESURRECTION**

1. Centuries before Christ ever came into this world, it was prophesied that He would be raised from the dead (Isaiah 53:10-12; Jonah 1:17; Psalm 16:10; Matt. 12:39-40)
2. The empty tomb: The world couldn't produce the dead body of Jesus Christ (Luke 24:38-43)
3. Christ's own words: Christ Himself many times told His disciples that He would be raised from the dead (Matt. 12:40; 16:21; 17:9, 22-23; 20:18-19; 26:32; Mark 8:31; 10:34; John 2:19-22)
4. Thus, if He deceived His disciples, He could not be trusted, thus disqualifying Him to be Lord and Savior.

## **15 TIMES APPEARANCES OF THE LORD AFTER THE RESURRECTION**

- Luke indicated that Christ proved His resurrection by many infallible proofs (Acts 1:3) as follows:
  1. Mary Magdalene (John 20:14-18)
  2. Group of women (Matt. 28:9-10)
  3. Peter (Luke 24:34; 1 Cor. 15:5)
  4. Two Emmaus disciples (Luke 24:13-31)
  5. Ten disciples minus Thomas (John 20:24-29)
  6. Peter, Thomas, Nathaniel, John etc., (Jn. 21:1-23)
  7. Eleven disciples (John 20:21-29)
  8. Five hundred brethren at one time (1 Cor. 15:6)
  9. James, the Lord's brother (1 Cor. 15:7)
  10. Eleven disciples at the mount in Galilee (Matt. 28:15-20)
  11. Paul on the road to Damascus (Acts 9:3-6)
  12. Paul in a temple at Jerusalem (Acts 22:17-21)
  13. Paul at Jerusalem (Acts 23:11)
  14. Stephen at his martyrdom (Acts 7:55)
  15. John on the Isle of Patmos (Rev. 1:10-19)

NB: Jesus talked with His disciples; they ate with Him; they saw His physical form; they saw His hand, feet, side where the nails and spear had pierced

Our Lord did not appear to a few but to hundreds and the testimony of these all agreed and harmonized

## **CHRIST OUR FOUNDATION**

Christ connects with The Atonement or the Passover

- Exodus chapters 11; 12; and 13
- Laying the Foundation for the Passover
- Exodus 11:1
- The LORD to bring ONE Plague
- That ONE Plague will end all slavery in Egypt
- The Atonement, or Passover is the Death of Christ
- The Death of Christ is that One Plague in Exodus the LORD will do in Egypt (the World)

## **RESULTS OF THE PASSOVER, ATONEMENT OR DEATH OF CHRIST**

1. The devil cannot handle you
2. The atonement makes the devil powerless
3. The devil will thrust you out of Egypt
4. For people to know, teach it. Speak it (Exodus 11:2)
5. Every man and woman not to go empty handed (Exodus 11:2)



6. Claim jewels of gold and silver stolen from you by the devil (Exodus 11:2)
7. The Passover comes with favor (Exodus 11:3)
8. The Passover comes with destruction in the camp of the enemy (Exodus 11:5)
9. Nothing is like the Passover (Exodus 11:6)
10. The devil cannot harm those under the benefits of the Passover (Exodus 11:7)
11. The Passover brings a distinction between believers and unbelievers (Exodus 11:7)

### **WHY PREACH CHRIST – 18 REASONS**

1. He is the Passover Lamb (Exodus 12:1-6)
2. He is the life changer (Mark 10:52)
3. He is destiny changer (Exodus 12:2)
4. He is the Savior of the world (Isaiah 53:3-7)
5. He is the door to the sheep (John 10:9)
6. He is the Son of God (Matt. 17:5)
7. He is the Resurrection and the Life (John 11:25-26)
8. He is the Giver of life (John 10:10)
9. He is the Creator (John 1:1-3; Col. 1:16)
10. He is before all things (Col. 1:17)
11. He is the Healer (Matt. 8:16)
12. He is the soon coming King and Judge (Rev. 19:11)
13. He came to save sinners from eternal condemnation (John 3:14-18)
14. He is the hope of the world (Luke 1:79)
15. He is the Bread of Life (John 6:35)
16. He is the Way to the Father (John 14:6)
17. He destroys the work of the devil (1John 3:8-9)
18. Christ is the Gospel (1Cor. 9:16)

### **THE ATONEMENT**

- The atonement when well explained means coming to be one with God: At-One-Ment.
- The Old Testament meaning of atonement has to do with covering over sin or making proper payment which satisfies God because of sin which goes against His holy character.
- The New Testament meaning of atonement has to do with permanent removal and forgiveness of sins due to what Christ on the cross.
- God cannot forgive sin unless proper atonement is made to appease Him. Sin against a Holy God has to be atoned for.
- The root meaning for atonement is located in Leviticus 16.

- Matt. 1:21
- John 1:29
- 1Pet. 3:18

### **THE MERCY SEAT**

- The ark of the covenant kept in the Holy of Holies first in the tabernacle and later in the temple had a “Mercy Seat” representing the atonement cover on which the high priest sprinkles the blood of the animal of the animal sacrifice because of the sin of the people for breaking God’s laws.
- Sprinkling blood on the mercy seat to atone for the sins of the people is only a temporal way of dealing with sin according to the book of Hebrews. It had to be done regularly for individuals and yearly for the whole nation.
- The high priest also had to offer sacrifice for himself before he could atone for the sins of the people.
  - Hebrews 7:26-28
  - Hebrews 9:1-9
  - Hebrews 9:11-14
- Perfect animals without blemish are offered for the temporal remission of sins of the nation. The same way the Messiah – God’s Son had to be perfect or be sinless sacrifice to permanently deal with sin at all time.
- God used Christ’s death on the cross to provide the ultimate way to atone for the sins of humanity. Christ as God-man and Christ’s deity makes Him sinless, so His precious blood could save us all.
  - Heb. 2:17
  - 1John 4:10
  - 1Pet. 1:18-19

### **THE FUNDAMENTALS OF THE ATONEMENT**

1. It is sacrificial
2. It is substitutionary
3. It is sufficient
4. It is final
5. It is permanent

### **IT IS SACRIFICIAL**

- Sacrifice is giving up something of value. If what is given is not valuable, it’s not sacrifice.
- Jesus Christ gave His life for redemption of humanity out of love and unquestionable obedience to the Father.
- Christ sacrificed Himself.

- John 3:16
- 1Cor. 5:7
- Heb. 9:26
- Heb. 12:2
- John 10:17-18

### **IT IS SUBSTITUTIONARY**

- Christ did not have to offer a sacrifice for Himself because He was perfect and sinless Son of God.
- He was the perfect substitute for the sins of men. If not, God would not have accepted His sacrifice.
- The sacrifice Jesus Christ made was permanent which no man was able to make.
- The song writer says, "We owe a debt we could not pay, Christ paid the debt He did not owe.
- Christ's sacrifice on the cross was substitutionary because it was made for and on behalf of humanity.
- Christ's sacrifice was once for all as He took our sins in His body to pay the penalty on our behalf.
  - Heb. 9:26
  - Heb. 7:27
  - Mark 10:45
  - 1Pet. 2:24
  - 2Cor. 5:21

### **IT IS SUFFICIENT**

- The death of Christ on the cross was sufficient to pay or atone for the sins of all men of all time and was so accepted by God.
- The substitutionary atonement of Christ was enough to satisfy and appease a Holy God. God does not need any sacrifice for humanity throughout eternity.
  - Heb. 1:3; 10:10
  - Heb. 10:13-14
  - 1Pet. 3:18
  - 1Johjn 2:2

### **IT IS FINAL**

- The one-time perfect sacrifice of Christ for sin was just what god needed to atone for our sins.
  - Heb. 9:12-15
  - Heb. 10:17-18

## IT IS PERMANENT

- The perfect sacrifice of Christ provided a permanent means of dealing with sin. Christ doesn't need to die every year to deal with sins as it was in the Old Testament.
- The meaning of permanent means nothing whatsoever can change it.
  - Heb. 10:12-14
  - Heb. 9:28
  - 1John 1:7-9

## THE EXTENT OF THE ATONEMENT

- The extent of the atonement is one of the most difficult subjects in the Bible
- Is the atonement sufficient to save the whole world?
- Has the atonement rendered the whole world savable yet not all will be saved?
- While some would argue that Christ died only for the elect (those chosen by God), the witness of Scripture is clearly that Christ died for all men even though all would not be saved because all would not choose to receive by faith the forgiveness of sins provided on the cross.
- Christ died for the ungodly, all lost men, even those who reject Him. In that sense Christ rendered all men savable.
  - 1Tim. 2:3-6
  - 1Tim. 4:10
  - John 3:16
  - Acts 17:30-31
  - Rom. 10:12-13
  - 1John 2:2
  - Heb. 2:9
  - Rom. 5:6-8
  - 2Pet. 2:1

## THE ISSUE

- For whom did Christ die?

## THE TWO BORDERING QUESTIONS:

1. Did Christ die for a definite number of people [elect] (Limited atonement or particular redemption)?
2. Did Christ die for the whole world (Unlimited atonement)?

## LIMITED ATONEMENT

- Reformed Doctrine:
  1. But Reformed Churches (Presbyterian or Calvinism) believe in a Limited Atonement

2. Christ saves to the uttermost every one of those He laid down His life for (Luke 19:10; Rom. 5:10; 2Cor. 5:21; Gal. 1:4; Eph. 1:7)
3. Christ laid down His life for His people (Matt. 1:21)
4. Christ laid down His life for His sheep (John 10:11, 15)
5. Christ laid down His life for the church (Acts 20:28; Eph. 5:25-27)
6. Christ laid down His life for the elect (Rom. 8:28-35)
7. NB: The extent of the atonement is one of the most difficult subjects in the Bible

### **UNLIMITED ATONEMENT**

- Did Christ die for all or only for the elect?
- Catholics, Lutherans, and Arminians regard the atonement of Christ as universal
- Christ suffered and died for the purpose of saving all without any exception
- Christ did not actually save, but made salvation possible for all
- Redemption of men is dependent upon their own choice.
- Many godly men in the church who believe that Christ died for the world indiscriminately: John Wesley, Richard Baxter, Charles Ryle, Morgan Campbell and others
- Today, most evangelicals hold to unlimited Atonement (Billy Graham may fall under this category)
- It means Christ not only died for the sinner but substituted for our sins

### **CHRIST DIED FOR US MEANS (Rom. 5:8)**

1. Christ died in our behalf
2. Christ died instead of us
3. Christ died in place of **sin** and **sinner**s
4. To the saint, his sin is no more there, and he is no more a sinner and sin bearer
5. Christ gave His life as a ransom for many (Mark 10:45)
6. God delivered His Son up for us all (Rom. 8:32)

### **BIBLICAL BASIS FOR UNLIMITED ATONEMENT**

1. "If I be lifted up, I will draw all men to Myself" [made possible for those who believe] (John 12:32)
2. "Christ died for all" [made possible for those who believe] (2 Cor. 5:15)
3. "Christ gave Himself a ransom for all" [made possible for those who believe] (1 Tim. 2:6; Tit. 2:11; Heb. 2:9)
4. "So also in Christ, all shall be made alive" [made possible for those who believe] (1 Cor. 15:22)

5. "That Christ might taste death for everyone" [made possible for those who believe] (Heb. 2:9)
6. "Jesus is the bread of life" [Made possible for those who come to Him] (John 6:35)
7. "Jesus gives life to the world" [made possible for those who believe (John 1:29; 6:33)
8. Christ died for the world (John 1:29; 1John 2:2; 4:14;

### **CHRIST'S WORK ON THE CROSS**

Three things happened on the cross:

1. Reconciliation
2. Redemption
3. Propitiation

#### **RECONCILIATION**

- On the cross in Christ, God reconciled the world to Himself. He made it possible for man to come back to God. It was man who needed to be reconciled back to God and not God to man.
  - 2Cor. 5:16-21
  - Rom. 5:10-11
  - Col. 1:21-22

#### **REDEMPTION**

- To redeem simply means to buy back. Men are not only lost but have been enslaved to sin and Satan. On the cross, Christ paid the ransom price so that men no longer had to be slaves to sin and Satan.
  - Mark 10:45
  - Gal. 4:4-5
  - Titus 2:14
  - Gal. 3:13-14
  - 1Pet. 1:18
  - Col. 1:13-14
  - Heb. 9:15

#### **PROPITIATION**

- Propitiation clears the guilt in the sinner's life and expiation pacifies God for the sin committed, else the penalty must stand.

- On the other words, committing sin demands God's just judgment and Christ's death on the cross propitiated (paid for the sin's penalty). Thus, God's wrath appeased or satisfied and atoned for.
- Christ's death on the cross provided the only payment which was sufficient to satisfy Holy God.
- 1John 2:2 where atoning sacrifice translates propitiation.
- Rom. 3:25 where sacrifice of atonement translates propitiation.
- Heb. 2:17 where make atonement for includes idea of propitiation.

### **IN SUMMARY, ON THE CROSS:**

- Christ dealt with man's bondage to sin (redemption).
- Man's broken relationship to God (reconciliation)
- Man's sin against God (atonement).

### **POWER OF THE CROSS**

- Christ tasted death for everyone (Heb. 2:9)
  - **Heb. 2:9** But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honor; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.
- Christ saves to the uttermost (Heb. 7:25)
  - **Heb. 7:25** Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.
- Christ preached to the death in prison since the days of Noah (1 Pet. 3:18-22; 4:5-6)
  - **1Pe 3:18** For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit:
  - **1Pe 3:19** By which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison;
  - **1Pe 3:20** Which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water.
- Gospel Preached to the Dead
  - 1Pe 4:5 Who shall give account to him that is ready to judge the quick and the dead.
  - 1Pe 4:6 For this cause was the gospel preached also to them that are dead, that they might be judged according to men in the flesh but live according to God in the spirit.
- Christ descended to the lowest parts of the earth and took captivity captive (Eph. 4:8-10)

- **Eph. 4:8** Wherefore he saith, when he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men.
- **Eph. 4:9** Now that he ascended, what is it but that he also descended first into the lower parts of the earth?
- **Eph. 4:10** He that descended is the same also that ascended up far above all heavens, that he might fill all things.
- Christ delivered us from the devil's kingdom through the cross (Col. 1:13-14)
- **Col 1:13** Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son:
- **Col 1:14** In whom we have redemption through his blood, *even* the forgiveness of sins
- Reconciled all things to Himself through the cross (Col. 1:19-20)
- Col 1:19 For it pleased the Father that in him should all fulness dwell;
- Col 1:20 And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven.
- Col 1:21 And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled
- Col 1:22 In the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unproveable in his sight:
- Wiped the hand writing of requirements against us (Col. 2:13-15)
  - **Col 2:13** Even when you were dead because of your offenses and the uncircumcision of your flesh, God made you alive with him when he forgave us all of our offenses,
  - **Col 2:14** having erased the charges that were brought against us, along with their obligations that were hostile to us. He took those charges away when he nailed them to the cross.
  - **Col 2:15** And when he had disarmed the rulers and the authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them in the cross.

Temple veil torn into two on the cross paving way for the new order of worship (Luke 23:44-46)

- Lk. 23:39 And one of the malefactors which were hanged railed on him, saying, If thou be Christ, save thyself and us.
- **Luke 23:40** But the other answering rebuked him, saying, Dost not thou fear God, seeing thou art in the same condemnation?
- **Luke 23:41** And we indeed justly; for we receive the due reward of our deeds: but this man hath done nothing amiss.
- **Luke 23:4** And he said unto Jesus, Lord, remember me when thou comest into thy kingdom.



- **Luke 23:43** And Jesus said unto him, Verily I say unto thee, Today shalt thou be with me in paradise.
- **Luke 23:44** And it was about the sixth hour, and there was a darkness over all the earth until the ninth hour.
- **Luke 23:45** And the sun was darkened, and the veil of the temple was rent in the midst.
- **Luke 23:46** And when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit: and having said thus, he gave up the ghost.

### **WHAT IF JESUS HAD NEVER BEEN BORN – CREDIT TO JAMES KENNEDY**

- Jesus Christ and the church have made positive impact in the world more than any other person, religion or country had made. The impact centers on various areas such as morality, health, sex, medicine, art, music, charity, economics, government, science, economics, founding of America among others.
- It is true that Christianity has had its shortcomings, however, the sins of the church were not worse than the pagan world. Christianity at its worst is better than paganism at its best.
- Jesus Christ, the greatest man who ever lived, has changed virtually every aspect of human life, and most people don't know it.
- Despite its humble origins, the church has made more impact on earth for good than any other movement or force in history. Here are some few highlights of positive contributions made by the church.
  - Hospitals, which essentially began in the Middle Ages.
  - Universities, which also began during the Middle Ages. In addition, most of the world's greatest universities were started by Christians or for Christian purposes.
  - Literacy and education for masses.
  - Capitalism and free-enterprise.
  - The abolition of slave trade
  - Modern science
  - Elevation of women
  - The discovery of the New World by Columbus.
  - Benevolence and charity – The Good Samaritan ethic
  - Higher standards of justice
  - Elevation of the common man.
  - Condemnation of adultery, homosexuality and other social perversions.

- High regard of human life.
- The countless changed lives transformed from liabilities into assets to society because of the gospel.
- The eternal salvation of countless souls.

### Science

- Hasn't religion always been the enemy of science? No! Furthermore, many scholars agree that the scientific revolution that gained great momentum in the 17<sup>th</sup> century was birthed for the most part by Reformed Christianity.

The following Christians founded the following branches of Science:

1. Antiseptic surgery: Joseph Lister
  2. Bacteriology: Louis Pasteur
  3. Calculus: Isaac Newton
  4. Dynamics: Isaac Newton
  5. Celestial Mathematics: Johannes Kepler
  6. Chemistry: Robert Boyle
  7. Comparative Anatomy: Georges Cuvier
  8. Computer Science: Charles Babbage
  9. Dimensional Analysis: Lord Rayleigh
  10. Electronics: John Fleming
  11. Electrodynamics: James Maxwell
  12. Electromagnetics: Michael Faraday
  13. Energetics: Lord Kelvin
  14. Entomology of Living Insects: Henri Fabre
  15. Fluid Mechanics: George Stokes
  16. Genetics: Gregory Mendel
  17. Gynecology: James Simpson
  18. Hydrostatics: Blaise Pascal
  19. Natural History: John Ray
  20. Thomas Edison: Storage Battery, Electric Bulb, 'X' Ray machine, microphone
- George Washington, in his farewell address of September 1796, warned Americans of the dangers of separating morality from Christianity.
  - Establishment of Universities such as Harvard, Cambridge, Oxford started with study of the Bible (Theology).

### ENEMIES OF CHRIST AND CHRISTIANITY

- Christ's influence in the world is immeasurable. Yet not all have been happy with about Christ's coming into the world. Friederich Nietzsche, the 19<sup>th</sup> century atheist

philosopher who coined the phrase, “God is dead,” likened Christianity to poison that has infected the world.

- Both Hitler and Nietzsche wised Jesus Christ had not been born. Many ideas of Nietzsche were put into practice by his philosophical disciple Hitler, and about 16 million died as a result.

## **IN DEFENSE OF CHRIST AND CHRISTIANITY**

### **Children**

- In the ancient world, child sacrifice was a common phenomenon. Infanticide was not only legal, it was applauded. And killing of one’s own child could be an act of beauty in Rome.
- However, since that time, Christians have cherished life as sacred, even the life of the unborn child.
- Abortion disappeared in the early church. Founding homes, orphanages, and nursery homes were started to house children. And it all goes back to Jesus Christ. If he had never been born, we would never have seen this change in the value of human life.

### **Women**

- Prior to the coming of Christ, a woman’s life was very cheap. In ancient cultures, the wife was the property of the husband. In India, widows were burned on the funeral pyres of their husbands. These were stopped in the early 19h century through the ministry of William Carey.

### **Slavery**

- Half of the population of the Roman Empire was slaves. Three fourths of the population of Athens was slaves. Christianity abolished slavery, first in the ancient world and then later in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.
- The spread of the gospel represents the seeds sown for eventual dissolution of slavery.

### **Sexuality**

- Christianity has helped to preserve the family as the basic unit of society. It has prevented millions of people from getting sexually transmitted diseases.
- Writings about homosexuality, rape, unnatural sexual relations were penned down 4,500 years ago before the collapse of the old kingdom of Egypt. Christianity has come to condemn all these sexual perversions.

## Education

- Every school you see, public or private, religious or secular – is a visible reminder of the religion of Jesus Christ. So is every college and university. The fact is that the phenomenon of education for the masses has its roots in Christianity.
- Christianity gave rise to the concept of education for everyone. The roots of education for the masses goes back to the reformation and, especially to John Calvin.

## The message of Churchill

- During one of the darkest periods of World War II, after the collapse of France and before American involvement, Churchill wrote that the question in the minds of friends and foes was: “Will Britain surrender too?”
- At that time, he made a speech that contained this sentence: “I expect that the Battle of Britain is about to begin. Upon this battle depends the survival of Christian civilization.” The great statesman recognized the link between Christianity and civility, in contrast with new paganism and tyranny. Providentially, Christian civilization won. But where it has lost, all manner of terrors have been unleashed.
- “No century has been like ours in terms of man killing his fellow man. About 130 million died because of atheistic ideology” – Hitler, Stalin and Mao of China. When a person denies the existence of God, you only have the material world. You have killed the spiritual world.

## THE UNIQUENESS OF CHRIST

Credit to Norman Geisler

- Orthodox Christians believe that Jesus is the unique Son of God in human flesh. However, some like Muslims, think that Jesus was a prophet along with other prophets. Hinduism depicts Christ as one among many great gurus. Liberal Christians and many others hold Christ as a good human being and a great moral example.

## DEITY AND HUMANITY OF CHRIST

- The truth about Christ is based primarily on the New Testament documents which have been shown elsewhere to be authentic. The New Testament record, especially the Gospels, is one of the most reliable documents from the ancient world.
- Jesus Christ was unique in that He alone, of all who ever lived, was both God and Man. The New Testament teaches that Christ is both fully God and fully Man. It's the hypostatic union of Christ.

## **THE PRESENT MINISTRY OF CHRIST**

Christ is now in Heaven seated at the right hand of God having resumed full authority in His pre-incarnate position of pre-eminence and sovereignty.

### **CHRIST'S MINISTRY IN HEAVEN**

- Christ is exercising authority over and sustaining all of the created order in accordance with the Father's plan.
  - Matt. 28:18
  - Eph. 1:19-22
  - Col. 1:17-18
  - 1Pet. 3:21-22
- Interceding for individual saints and the church before the Father.
  - 1John 2:1
  - Rom. 8:33-34
- Securely protecting salvation of all saints
  - Heb. 7:25
  - John 10:27-30
  - Rom. 8:38-39
  - Jude 1:24
- Preparing a place for believers in Heaven (John 14:1-3).

### **CHRIST'S MINISTRY TO THE CHURCH**

- Christ is acting as head and guardian.
  - Eph. 1:19-23
  - Heb. 13:20
- Being the chief cornerstone and foundation.
  - 1Cor. 3:11-15
  - Eph. 2:20
  - 1Pet. 2:4-8
- Cleansing the body of Christ and preparing her to His bride (Eph. 5:25-27).
- Giving spiritually gifted men to the church to equip and build up the church to maturity in Him (Eph. 4:7-16).

### **CHRIST'S MINISTRY TO INDIVIDUAL BELIEVERS**

- Christ is indwelling and empowering believers
  - Rom. 8:9-11
  - Eph. 4:13
- Christ is making believers dead to sin but alive to God (Rom. 6:11-12).
- Christ is sympathizing with believers in their weakness (Heb. 4:15).
- Christ is extending mercy and grace to help in times of need (Heb. 4:16).

- Christ is enabling believers to bear fruit as they abide in Him (John 15:1-17).
- Christ is empowering believers to resist temptation (Heb. 2:17-18).
- Christ is witnessing through believers (Acts 1:8).
- Christ is being to believers wisdom, righteousness and holiness (1Cor. 1:30).
- Christ is manifesting His life and glory through believers.
  - 2Cor. 4:5-7
  - Gal. 2:20
  - Col. 3:4
- Christ is fellowshiping with believers (1John 1:3).
- Christ is equipping believers to do His will and please God (Heb. 13:21).
- Christ is conforming believers to His image.
  - 2Cor. 3:18
  - Rom. 8:28-29
  - Phil. 3:20-21
- Christ is meeting the needs of believers through His glorious riches and mutually shared inheritance (Phil. 4:19).
- Christ is giving believers everything needed for life and godliness (1Pet. 1:2-3).

### **TYPOLOGIES OF CHRIST**

- Biblical type is one of the ways in which Christ is revealed in the Bible. On the road to Emmaus, Christ, beginning with Moses and the Prophets, explained to the two disciples what was said in all the Scriptures concerning Himself (Luke 24:13-27).
- A biblical type may be defined as a historical person, object, institution, or even that has, in addition to its historical significance, a divinely intended future significance. In this function, it foreshadows a corresponding person, object, institution, or event, known as an antitype. And there should be a correspondence between type and antitype. The following is a summary of the types of Christ:

### **ADAM AS A TYPE OF CHRIST**

- Adam is recognized as a type of Christ in as much as the NT explicitly designates him as such..."as did Adam, who was a pattern or type of the one to come" (Rom. 5:14). Both entered the world through special act of God as sinless men. Adam is the head of the old creation; Christ is the head of the new creation. Through Adam's one transgression there resulted condemnation to all men; through Christ's one act of righteousness there resulted justification of life to all men who believe in him (Rom. 5:15-19).

### **MELCHIZEDEK AS A TYPE OF CHRIST**

- Melchizedek (righteous king of Salem) is declared a type of Christ in Hebrews 7. Speaking of him, the writer of Hebrews declared that without father or mother, without genealogy, without beginning of days or end of life, he, like the Son of God remains a priest forever (Heb. 7:3). Thus Melchizedek typifies Christ as high priest. “The lord has sworn and will not change His mind: You are a priest forever, in the order of Melchizedek” Psalm 110:4.

### **ISAAC AS A TYPE OF CHRIST**

- In Gen. 22:2, it is recorded that Abraham was called upon by God to offer up his son Isaac as a sacrifice, a burn offering. The similarity between this and what is implied in John 3:14-16, strongly suggests a typical relationship between Isaac and Christ. Just as Christ willingly offered Himself up to be the “Lamb of God,” so too it would seem that Isaac gave in obedience to his father even unto death.

### **JOSEPH AS A TYPE OF CHRIST**

- Joseph typifies Christ in some ways with respect to his first and second advents. Joseph, like Christ at his first advent, was rejected by his brothers and sold into slavery for a price. Like Christ, Joseph suffered persecution and hardship before being exalted. Like Christ, Joseph endured several levels of humiliation going through favorite son, to servant, and then slave before being exalted as ruler of the land – see Phil. 2. Joseph was sent before his brothers to prepare the way for their deliverance in the time of great famine (Gen. 45:4-8; 47:23-25; 50:20-21). In this way Joseph was used to effect blessing upon the elect seed and other families of the earth in typical fulfilment of the Abrahamic covenant, even as Christ will do at His second coming.
- Further, Joseph typifies Christ at His second coming in that he tested his brothers to see if they had truly repented even as Christ will purify His brothers during the great tribulation and lead them to repentance.
- In conclusion, Joseph and Christ are both objects of special love by their fathers; both are hated by their brethren; both are rejected as rulers over their brethren; both are conspired against and sold for silver; both are condemned though innocent; and both are raised from humiliation to positions of exaltation by the power of God to be agents of blessing. Taking all these into consideration leads to the conclusion that Joseph is a type of Christ by correspondence.

### **JUDAH AS A TYPE OF CHRIST**

- Judah, the elect line through whom the ruler would come (Gen. 49:10), is a type of Christ at His first coming by correspondence in the willing offer of himself as a substitute for his brother. When the sons of Israel are tested by Joseph, Judah, as

Christ who came after him, offers himself as a substitute in place of his brother Benjamin.

### **MOSES AS A TYPE OF CHRIST**

- Moses is a type of Christ by correspondence in a number of ways. Most notable, he is the only biblical person other than Christ to hold the three offices prophet (Deut. 34:10-12), priest (Exodus 32:31-35), and king, (although Moses was not king, he nevertheless functioned as ruler of Israel (Deut. 33:4-5). As a prophet, Christ was the prophet like Moses of whom Moses spoke (Deut. 18:15; John 1:45; Acts 7:37).
- Further, both were endangered in infancy, both renounced power and wealth, both were rejected by their brethren, both were deliverers, lawgivers and mediators. Additionally, Moses like Christ offered himself as a substitute for the nation after the people sinned by worshipping the golden calf at Sinai. God accepted Moses' intercessory prayer to forgive the people.

### **PASSOVER LAMB AS A TYPE OF CHRIST**

- The Passover lamb is a type of Christ with respect to the sacrificial offering of himself. By correspondence, the lamb, like Christ, was without blemish and was sacrificed as a substitute with the blood being applied to effect the atonement for sin. Furthermore, the NT declares that Christ is the Passover Lamb, the lamb provided by God (John 1:29, 36; 1Cor. 5:7).

### **THE ROCK AS A TYPE OF CHRIST**

- The rock from which water sprung up in the wilderness is a type of Christ, for 1Cor. 10:4 declares that "They drank of the spiritual Rock that followed them, and that Rock was Christ."

### **THE BRONZE SERPENT AS A TYPE OF CHRIST**

- The bronze serpent on the stake (Num. 21:4-9) is a type of Christ as Jesus Himself declares in John 3:14, "And as Moses lifted the bronze serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up, that everyone who believes in Him may have eternal life." Both the serpent and Christ are lifted up. Faith is involved in both cases. Those who looked on the serpent were delivered and received, or did not lose their physical life, while all who look on Christ lifted up on the cross by faith receive eternal life.

### **THE OFFICE OF JESUS CHRIST**

The Bible ascribes a threefold office to Christ, speaking of Him as Prophet, Priest and King.



## THE PROPHETIC OFFICE

- A prophet is one who receives divine revelations in dreams, visions or verbal communications; and passes these on to the people either orally or visibly in prophetic actions.
  - Exodus 7:1
  - Deut. 18:18
  - Num. 12:6-8
  - Isaiah 6:1+
  - Jer. 1:4-10
  - Ezek. 3:1-4, 17
- His work may pertain to the past, present or future.
- Christ functioned as Prophet already in the Old testament (1Pet. 1:11; 3:18-20).
- The Old Testament predicted the coming of Christ as prophet (Deut. 18:15; Acts 3:23).
- Christ speaks of Himself as prophet in Luke 13:33.
- He claims to bring a message from the father just as the Old testament prophets did.
- John 8:26-28.
- John 12:49-50
  - John 14:10, 24
- He foretells future events
- Matt. 24:3-35
- Luke 19:41-44
- And speaks with singular authority (Matt. 7:29).
- The people recognized Him as Prophet
  - Matt. 21:11, 46
  - Luke 7:16
  - Luke 24:19
  - John 6:14
  - John 7:40
  - John 9:17

## THE PRIESTLY OFFICE

- The Old Testament also predicted and prefigured the priesthood of the coming Redeemer.
  - Psalm 110:4
  - Zech. 6:18
  - Isaiah 53:1+

- In the New Testament, there is only a single book in which He is called priest, namely Hebrews, but there, the name is found repeatedly.
  - Heb. 3:1
  - Heb. 4:14
  - Heb. 5:5
  - Heb. 6:20
  - Heb. 7:26
  - Heb. 8:1
- Other books refer to His priestly work.
  - Mark 10:45
  - John 1:29
  - Rom. 3:24-25
  - Rom. 8:34
  - 1Cor. 5:7
  - 1John 2:2
  - 1Pet. 2:24
  - 1Pet. 3:18
- While a prophet represented God among the people, a priest represented the people before God.
- Both were teachers, but while the former taught moral law, the latter taught the ceremonial law.
- A priest makes intercession for the people
- The priestly work of Christ was first of all, to bring a sacrifice for sin. The Old Testament sacrifices were a type pointing forward to the great sacrifice of Christ.
  - Heb. 9:23-24
  - Heb. 10:1
  - Heb. 13:11-12
- Hence Christ is also called the Lamb of God
- And our Passover Lamb
  - John 1:29
  - 2Cor. 5:7
- Christ is also referred to as our intercessor
  - Rom. 8:34
  - Heb. 7:25
  - Heb. 9:24
  - 1John 2:1
- His intercessory work goes beyond prayer to sacrifice. He presents His sacrifice to God, and on that grounds, claims all spiritual blessings for His people, and defends them against the charges of Satan.

## **CHRIST AS KING**

- In His first coming Christ presented Himself as King
  - Matt. 2:2
  - Matt. 21:1-10
  - Matt. 27:11
  - Mark 1:14-15
  - Luke 17:20-21
  - John 6:5
- But He was rejected as King and was crucified
  - Luke 19:11-14
  - John 19:14-16
  - Matt. 27:37
- Christ was rejected because He was not the political civil Messiah the Jews were looking for, and He was a real threat to their religious system (John 11:45-57).
- His Kingdom on earth has been postponed until second coming (Matt. 21:38-43).
- Beginning with his coming, Christ will rule and reign as King of kings forever and ever.
  - Zech. 14:1-9
  - Phil. 2:5-11
  - Rev. 11:15
  - Rev. 15:2-4
  - Rev. 17:12-14
  - Rev. 19:16
  - Rev. 22:1-5

## **KINGDOM ENCOUNTER – KINGDOM OF CHRIST**

- The Ethos
- The Existence
- The Exploits

### **THE ETHOS OF THE KINGDOM (MT. 5.1-13)**

- Kingdom Simplicity
- Kingdom Sorrow
- Kingdom Salvation
- Kingdom Sympathy
- Kingdom Sanctification
- Kingdom Sons
- Kingdom Suffering

**ENHANCING THE KINGDOM**

- Kingdom Principles
- Kingdom Programs
- Kingdom Pattern
- Kingdom Preparation
- Kingdom Presence
- Kingdom Perspective [focused]
- Kingdom Priority
- Kingdom Passion
- Kingdom Purity
- Kingdom Pardon
- Kingdom Peace

**EXPLOITS OF THE KINGDOM**

- Kingdom Provision
- Kingdom Possession
- Kingdom Protection
- Kingdom Partnership
- Kingdom Persecution
- Kingdom Prayer
- Kingdom Power
- Kingdom Progress

## TYPOLOGIES OF CHRIST

### THE SACRIFICES AND FEASTS OF ISRAEL AS TYPES OF CHRIST

The doctrinal significance of the sacrifices and feasts of Israel are a type of Christ.

## CONDENSED BIBLICAL CYCLOPEDIA

by Ashley S. Johnson (1896)

### CHRIST IN THE SABBATH AND FEASTS OF ISRAEL

The Hebrews were required to keep:

1. *The Sabbath Day* (Exodus 20:8-11). They were not permitted,
  1. to leave their dwellings (Exodus 16:29),
  2. nor kindle a fire throughout their habitations on the Sabbath day (Exodus 35:1-3).

The death penalty was attached to the violation of this law (Num. 15:32-36).

2. *The Sabbatical Year*. They were to sow their fields, prune their Vineyards and enjoy the fruits of their labors for six years, but in the seventh year the land and the people were to rest (Lev. 25:1-7). During the seventh year they subsisted upon the spontaneous Accumulation of the excessive crops of the sixth year (Lev. 25:6-7, Lev. 25:20-22).
3. *The Jubilee*. They were to number seven sabbaths of years, forty-nine years, and on the tenth day of the seventh month they were To sound the trumpet throughout all the land; slaves were released and Every man returned to his possession (Lev. 25:8-13). The price of everything in Israel was regulated by the distance from the jubilee (Lev. 25:14-17).
4. *The Passover*. This feast originated in Egypt and was so named On the account of the passing over of the houses of the Hebrews by the Angel of death. In connection with it, and following it, they kept the Feast of unleavened bread (Exo. 12:1-29). The law of Moses, however, regulated the keeping of the feast. It was really eaten on the night of The fifteenth of Abib; the Hebrew day closed at sunset (Lev. 23:32). They killed the paschal lamb at the going down of the sun on the Fourteenth of the month (Exodus 12:1-6; Deut.16:1-8). The feast of unleavened bread began with the Passover and closed on the twenty-first day Of the month at sundown (Exodus 12:14-19; Lev. 23:1-8). No uncircumcised person was permitted to partake of the paschal feast (Exodus 12:43-51). Special offerings were made at the feast consisting of,
  1. two young bullocks,

2. one ram,
3. seven lambs,
4. and one goat,

For each day during the seven days, aggregating seventy-seven animals (Num. 28:16-25).

5. *First of Each Month.* On the beginning of each month during the Year they were required to offer,
  1. two young bullocks,
  2. one ram,
  3. seven lambs,
  4. and one kid of the goats (Num. 28:11-15).
6. *Feast of Weeks.* This feast was known as,
  1. feast of harvest (Exodus 23:16).
  2. feast of weeks (Exodus 34:22),
  3. day of first fruits (Num. 28:26),
  4. and Pentecost (Acts 2:1).

This feast occurred fifty days after the passover (Lev. 23:15-16 Deut. 16:9-12). They began to number the fifty days on the morrow after the first sabbath of the feast of unleavened bread, or on the sixteenth Day of Abib or Nisan (Exodus 12:11-20; Lev. 23:4-16). During this feast they offered,

5. first, two wave loaves made of the first fruits of the land,
6. seven lambs,
7. one young bullock,
8. two rams,
9. one kid of the goats,
10. and two lambs of the first year,

Making in all thirteen animals (Lev. 23:15-21; Num. 28:26-31).

7. *Feast of Trumpets.* This feast was held on the first day of the Seventh month of each year, and was characterized by the refraining of The people from work, and the blowing of trumpets (Num. 29:1). During this feast they offered
  1. one young bullock,

2. one ram,
  3. seven lambs of the first year,
  4. and one kid of the goats (Num. 29:1-6).
8. *Feast of Tabernacles*. This feast was the feast of ingathering, And was third in order of the annual feasts (Exodus 23:16). It was inaugurated on the fifteenth of Tishri, and lasted seven days (Lev. 23:33-44). It was kept as follows:
1. The people dwelt in booths formed of the branches of trees in Commemoration of their temporary habitations during the journey Through the wilderness (Lev. 23:34-44);
  2. it was inaugurated by a holy convocation (Lev. 23:36);
  3. and when it occurred in the Sabbatical year, portions of the law Were read publicly each day to men, women, children and Strangers (Deut. 31:10-13).

During the feast they offered,

4. seventy bullocks,
  5. fourteen rams,
  6. ninety-eight lambs,
  7. and seven kids,
- Or (70+14+98+7=189) one hundred and eighty-nine animals Altogether (Num. 29:12-33). Special offerings were made on the eighth day consisting of
8. one bullock,
  9. one ram,
  10. seven lambs,
11. and one goat (Num. 29:35, Num. 29:38).

## **SALVATION - SOTERIOLOGY**

### **The Differences between Salvation (soteriology) and Discipleship**

1. At salvation, the believer is a child (John 1:12)
2. In Discipleship, the believer is a son (Rom. 8:14).
3. Salvation is free gift (Isaiah 55:1-2; Rev. 22:17)
4. Discipleship is costly (Luke 14:25-35).
5. Salvation is without works (Eph. 2:8-9)
6. Discipleship involves works (Luke 19:13; Matt. 25:15-27).
7. Salvation involves justification (Rom. 5:16, 18)
8. Discipleship is a lifelong sanctification (Heb. 12:14; 1 Thess. 4:3-4, 7).
9. Jesus paid the price for our salvation (John 3:16)
10. In Discipleship, the believer pays the price (Matt. 19:21-22).
11. At salvation, we come to Jesus as Saviour (Mark 1:15)
12. In discipleship, we follow Jesus as Lord (Matt. 4:18-22; 19:21).
13. At salvation, the sinner believes the Gospel (Acts 16:30-31)
14. In Discipleship, the believer obeys the Gospel (John 15:14).
15. At salvation, the believer is born not made (John 1:12-13)
16. In Discipleship, the believer is made - trained (Matt. 4:18-22).
17. Salvation first, then discipleship not vice versa.
18. It is Jesus first then growth and changes follow.

### **SALVATION AND FAITH**

It takes only faith to receive the free gift of salvation

- Faith means to actively believe that:
  - Christ is God
  - We are utterly lost
  - Gospel is true
- And to:
  - Trust Christ for the forgiveness of sins
  - Trust Christ for eternal life
  - To have the life of Christ (John 6:35)
- The Result:
  - The sinner is then born again (John 1:12)
  - The born again experience is done by the Spirit (John 3:6)
  - The person is sealed by the promise Holy Spirit (Eph. 1:13)
  - Seal is a mark of ownership and identification
  - Seal is similar to wedding ring



## **RECEIVING SALVATION BY FAITH IS STATED IN DIFFERENT WAYS IN THE BIBLE**

- Abram believed God and it was credited to him as righteousness (Gen. 15:6)
- Yet to all who receive Him (John 1:12)
- To those who believe in His name (John 1:12)
- Come to Jesus (John 5:40)
- Whoever believes in Him shall not perish (John 3:16)
- Those who have faith in Jesus (Rom. 3:26)
- Anyone who trusts in Him will never be put to shame (Rom. 10:11)
- Everyone who calls on the name of the Lord shall be saved (Rom. 10:13)
- Everyone who believes in Him receives forgiveness of sins through His name (Acts 10:43)

## **HOW TO BE SAVED**

1. How one is saved (Eph. 2:8-9)
  - Saved by Grace alone
  - Through Faith alone
  - In Christ Jesus alone
2. Salvation demands repentance
3. Act 2:38 And Peter said to them, "Repent and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.
4. Confess with your mouth that Jesus Christ is God
5. Believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead (Rom. 10:9-13)
6. Believing takes place internally
7. Confessing takes place externally

## **HOW TO DETECT GOD'S VOICE – WHEN GOD SPEAKS, THERE IS:**

1. No doubt (To hesitate is not doubt)
2. No confusion (can lead to wrong decisions)
3. No fears (Can lead to unbelief in God)
  - You don't have to doubt your salvation
  - You don't have to get confused about your salvation
  - You don't have to be fearful about your salvation
  - Anytime a person experiences any one or all the above three emotional traits, it's not God speaking. It's either you or the devil speaking
  - You always have to believe, remain confident and hopeful of your salvation

## **CAN SALVATION BE LOST? NO!**

- Biblical Basis:
  1. We become God's children but once (John 1:12-13)
  2. Physically, nobody was born twice
  3. Once born cannot be unborn
  4. Nobody has two earthly fathers
  5. You are either God's child or the devil's child (1 John 3:10)
  6. Both the flesh and the Spirit gives birth (John 3:6)
  7. You cannot die in your sins if you believe in Christ: Christ death paid for our sins
  8. Christ finished all – The Penalty was fully paid (John 19:38)
  9. If it is not once saved forever saved, then salvation is by works – you have to earn it
  10. If salvation is eternal, grace eternal, mercy eternal, then forgiveness is equally eternal
  11. If salvation is not once, then how many times should one be saved before he is finally saved? (Heb. 10:11-12)
  12. If physical birth is once, then the new birth is also once
  13. Saints are not sinners and sinners are not saints (Rev. 7:14)
  14. Nobody can be a believer and unbeliever at the same time (2Cor 6:14-18)
  15. Nobody can be light and darkness at the same time (Matt. 5:13-16)
  16. Members of the church are called saints (Acts 9:13, 32, 41; Rom. 1:7; 8:27; 1Cor. 1:2; 2Cor. 1:1; Eph. 1:1, 15)
  17. The Old Covenant (Ezek. 3:18; Ezek. 18:21-28)
  18. Losing salvation turns Salvation to be "By Works" not and "By grace" (Luke 18:9-14)
  19. The New Covenant over-rules the Old (Heb. 10:9-10)
  20. Jesus finished it on the cross (John 19:30)
  21. The elect will surely turn again to God when he falls (Luke 15:11-32; Prov. 24:16)
  22. Salvation is once, but stand to the end (Matt. 24:14)

## **BIBLICAL BASIS: SALVATION AS A GIFT FOREVER**

23. Salvation is a gift from God (Eph. 2:8-9)
24. Salvation does not originate from the sinner but from Christ (John 4:13-14)
25. Salvation is God's eternal plan before ages began (Col. 1:26)
26. God holds our salvation (John 10:29)
27. The meaning of salvation is life without end (John 3:16)
28. Salvation is part of Christ's life (John 14:6)
29. Salvation is life abundant (John 10:10)

30. Christ died before the foundation of the world (Rev. 13:8)
31. The sins of the saved are totally cancelled through the blood of Christ (Heb. 9:22)
32. God remembers their sins and iniquities no more (Heb. 8:12)
33. God will cast our sins into the depths of the sea (Micah 7:19)
34. God will not keep His anger forever (Psalm 103:9)
35. God will not deal with us according to our sins (Psalm 103:10)
36. God's mercy towards us is like from the earth to the skies (Psalm 103:11)
37. As far as the east is from the west, so far has the LORD removed our sins (Psalm 103:12)
38. God visits iniquity to the 3<sup>rd</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> generation, but shows mercy to the thousand generation (Exodus 20:4)

### **CAN SALVATION BE LOST? YES!**

- Biblical Basis
  1. God is not a respecter of persons (Acts 10:34)
  2. 10 classes in eternal lake of Fire (Rev. 21:8)
  3. There is no peace unto the wicked (Isaiah 48:22)
  4. God was not pleased with most of the Israelites (1Cor. 10:1-11)
  5. He who stands must take care lest he falls (1Cor. 10:12)
  6. Not enter into the rest of God (Heb. 3:7-14)
  7. Fallen away (Heb. 6:4-6)
  8. Some may fail to reach the rest of God (Heb. 4:1-3)
  9. Hold fast what you have, lest one takes your crown (Rev. 3:11)
  10. Christ will pay according to works (Rev. 22:12)
  11. Degrees of punishment (Luke 12:47-48)
  12. Teachers have high standard of judgment (James 3:1)
  13. Stand to the end (Matt. 24:13)
  14. You can lose what you have worked for (2John v.8)

### **REASONS WHY SALVATION IS FOREVER:**

- Biblical Basis
  1. Doctrine of Predestination
  2. Doctrine of Election
  3. Doctrine of God's Grace
  4. Doctrine of God's Mercy
  5. Doctrine of Atonement
  6. Doctrine of Justification
  7. Doctrine of Forgiveness
  8. Doctrine of Repentance & Restitution

- 9. Doctrine of God's Righteousness
- 10. Doctrine of Holiness
- 11. Doctrine of Sanctification
- 12. Doctrine of Glorification

### **TRUE MEANING OF SALVATION**

- It's eternal life (John 3:16)
- Not perish (John 3:16)
- God's purpose is not to condemn the world (John 3:17)
- Eternal life is life without end
- God's idea is man to life forever
- Eternal life is life without condemnation (John 3:36)

God put both tree of knowledge and good, and tree of life at the very beginning in the Garden of Eden (Gen. 2:9)

### **SALVATION AND THE LAW**

- Old Testament grace came before the Law
- Abel declared righteous before the Law came (Heb. 11:4)
- Enoch walked with God and was the first man to experience rapture. He did not see death (Heb. 11:5; Gen. 5:23-24).
- Noah was saved by grace (Gen. 6:8)
- Abraham was justified by faith before the Law came (Gen. 15:6).
- Abraham was justified by faith whilst still uncircumcised (Rom. 4:10-11).
- Faith was stronger than the Law under the Old Testament
- Yet, Christ took away the first (Old Covenant) that He might establish the second (Heb. 10:9)
- By Christ's death, we have been sanctified once for all (Heb. 10:10)
- A place was found for the second covenant, because the first was faulty (Heb. 8:8)

### **EXCEPTIONS TO ETERNAL SECURITY**

- Called but Not Chosen (Matt. 22:14)
- The chosen will never lose their salvation
- Biblical Basis
  1. The 5 Wise & 5 Foolish virgins (Matt. 25:1-13)
    - 10 Virgins not the Church
    - Oil not Holy Spirit – cant be bought and sold (Matt. 25:10)
    - Central Truth here is Watchfulness (Matt. 25:13)
  2. Irresponsible & Wicked Ministers:

- Watchman who refused to sound the alarm (Ezek. 13:1-7)
  - The Unprofitable Servant (Matt. 25:24-30)
  - 3. People we think are Christians but are not
    - Church Goers (Matt. 22:8-14)
    - Miracle Workers (Matt. 7:21-23)
  - 4. God will spew lukewarm church members from His mouth (Rev. 3:18)
  - 5. Names blotted from the Book of Life (Rev. 3:5)
  - 6. Sin of Apostasy (Heb. 10:26-31)
  - 7. Sin of Blasphemy – Sin against the Holy Spirit (Matt. 12:29-32)
  - 8. Prayer of David: Take not your Holy Spirit from me (Psalm 51:11)
  - 9. Prayer and Moses: Or blot my name from the book of life (Exodus 32:32)
- God can blot names out of His Book (Exodus 32:33)

### **SALVATION AND GOD'S ETERNAL PLAN**

- Rev. 13:8
- Eph. 1:4+
- Those who go to church late are turned away at the gate of Heaven because they failed in coming to church early
- A case study:
  - Consider this woman with four children, husband is an unbeliever, has to attend to all household activities that Sunday morning, struggle to get taxi, was in the traffic for long minutes and came to church at 7.15AM. The Angel left church at 7.00. this had been this woman's plight ever since she married and started giving birth to children which she prayed for God to give.
  - This woman took a stick of match from her neighbor's kitchen without informing the owner. She died and went to hell for that offence. Her relationship with the Jesus Christ as Savior and Lord, all that she had done for the Lord ever since she became a Christian were not considered. Is this not a typical example of salvation by works
  - Are sinners in the lake of fire now or the Antichrist and his false prophet will be the first to be thrown into the lake of fire. Testimonies coming indicate that sinners are in the lake of fire. Does it not contradict SCRIPTURE (Rev.. 19:20)?
- Those who could not witness to their neighbors but did other things for the Lord did not have their names written in the book of life.

## WHERE DO WE PLACE THESE PASSAGES IF SALVATION CAN BE LOST?

- 2Cor. 5:10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things *done* in *his* body, according to that he hath done, whether *it be* good or bad.
- 1Cor. 3:10 According to the grace of God which is given unto me, as a wise master builder, I have laid the foundation, and another buildeth thereon. But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon.
- 1Cor. 3:11 For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ.
- 1Cor. 3:12 Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble;
- 1Cor. 3:13 Every man's work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is.
- 1Cor. 3:14 If any man's work abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward.
- 1Cor. 3:15 If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire.
- 1Cor. 3:16 Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and *that* the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?
- 1Cor. 3:17 If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the temple of God is holy, which *temple* ye are.

## SALVATION AND DISCIPLESHIP

### Principles of Discipleship

1. Discipleship is not an option for the church.
2. Discipleship is the main work of the church: Acts 14:21-28
3. Why the church has failed in making disciples?
  - Disobedience
  - Lack of understanding discipleship principles
  - Laziness
  - Making converts instead of disciples
4. What is a Disciple?
  - A committed learner of Christ
  - A submitted follower of Christ
  - A student learner of Christ
5. Who is a Disciple (Luke 6:40)
  5. Who has come to Christ as Savior
  6. Who has come to Christ as Lord

7. Who follows Christ
8. Who learns from Christ
9. Who wants to become like Christ

#### 6. What is Discipleship

5. It is not a ritual to perform
6. It is not a program to follow
7. It is not a form to fill
8. It is not a course to teach

#### 7. But Discipleship is

5. Being rightly related to Christ as Savior
6. Being rightly related to Christ as Lord
7. Being rightly related to Christ as Teacher
8. Being a follower of the Lord (Luke 5:27)
9. Being a servant and Jesus as Master
10. Learning from Christ (Matt. 11:28-29)
8. The Church as role model for immature believers (1Cor. 11:1; Heb. 13:7; 1Tim. 4:12; Phil. 4:9)

#### Characteristics of Discipleship

- How do you know you are a Disciple?
  1. Loves other believers (John 13:35)
  2. Obeys Christ and His Word (John 8:31)
  3. Bears much fruit (John 15:8; Col. 1:10)
  4. Personal growth to maturity ((1Cor. 11:1; Phil. 4:9)
  5. Making Christ known to others (Matt. 5:13-16)
  6. Interest in the spiritual growth of others (Gal. 4:19)

#### Conditions of Discipleship

7. Deny self-will and follow Christ (Luke 9:57-62)
8. Make Christ first (Luke 5:27-32)
9. Separate himself from the world (2Cor. 6:14-18)

#### Not all can be Disciples

10. Not all Christians are true Disciples
11. True Disciples leave all to follow Christ (Luke 5:11)
12. Not all can meet the conditions (Luke 14:25-35)

### **Marks of a True Disciple**

1. Disciples know Jesus and make Him better known (Matt. 4:18-22).
2. Disciples are strong (1 John 2:13-14).
3. Disciples keep the commandments of Christ (1 John 2:3).
4. Disciples walk even as Christ walked (1 John 2:6)
5. Disciples sin not (1John 3:6, 9)
6. Disciples overcome the world (1 John 2:15-17).
7. Disciples overcome Satan (1 John 4:4, 5:4, 18)
8. Disciples hate the world (1 John 2:15-17).
9. Disciples continue in unity & love (1 John 2:19).
10. Disciples have the anointing (1 John 2:20).
11. Disciples study Scriptures themselves (1John 2:27).
12. Disciples know the truth (1 John 2:21; John 8:32-36).
13. Disciples will never deny the Father/Son (1John 2:23-24)
14. Disciples obey the commands of Christ (1 John 2:3)
15. Disciples will not be ashamed at His coming (1John 2:28)
16. Disciples are born again (1 John 2:29)
17. Disciples walk in righteousness (1 John 2:29)
18. Disciples pursue purity (1 John 3:3)
19. Disciples are born by the Spirit (John 3:6)
20. Disciples have the seed of God in them (1 John 3:9)
21. Disciples don't keep on sinning (1John 3:6)
22. Disciples do not sin as a way of life (1 John 3:9)
23. Disciples are freed from condemnation (1John 3:21)
24. Disciples please the Father (1 John 3:22)
25. Disciples have the Spirit (1John 3:24)
26. Disciples have indwelling Spirit (1 John 3:24; 4:4, 13)
27. Disciples walk in faith (1 John 4:2, 15, 5:1, 10)
28. Disciples confess Christ (1 John 4:14)
29. Disciples have their prayers answered (1John 5:14-15)

### **The Goal of Christ's Death**

The goal of Christ's death is to offer salvation to lost humanity

The 4 Ps of Salvation

1. Salvation from the Pleasures of Sin
  2. Salvation from the Power of Sin
  3. Salvation from the Penalty of Sin
  4. Salvation from the presence of Sin
- Salvation from the Pleasure of Sin



- How God saves from the pleasures of sin
- **2Cor. 5:21** For our sake he made him to be sin who knew no sin, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

### **Righteousness in Two Types**

1. Positional Righteousness (2Cor. 5:21)
  - By imparting righteousness to the elect
  - Righteousness begins at regeneration (new birth)
  - Righteousness is God's very nature
  - Righteousness makes you stand right before God
  
2. Practical Righteousness (Gal. 5:22-24)
  - Progressive righteousness
  - Fruit of the Spirit is God's nature
  - Holiness is the result of Righteousness
  - Righteousness is from God; Holiness is from man
  - Righteousness makes you hate sin
  - It is Salvation from Pleasure of Sin

The saint has God's nature – Righteousness

- So he has salvation from the Pleasure of Sin Continues
  - Makes him avoid love of sin
  - Withstand temptation to sin
  - Avoid material things in world
  - Crucify the sinful nature
  - Mortify lust of the flesh
  - Just as faith does not cast out unbelief
  - Salvation does not cast away sin from our lives
  - Put sin under control
  - Walk in the Spirit

### **Salvation from The Penalty of Sin (Redemption)**

#### **Meaning of Penalty**

- To be saved from the penalty of sin means: To be saved from: the guilt, the wages, the punishment of sin (Rom. 6:23)
- The Apostle and the Jailor:
  1. "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and thou shalt be saved," (Acts 16:32)
  2. The apostle signified that all his sins would be remitted (cancelled) by God;
  3. Just as when the Lord said to the poor woman, "thy faith hath saved thee: go in peace" (Luke 7:50).

4. He meant that all her sins were now cancelled.
5. Forgiveness takes away the criminality and punishment of sin.
6. It has the same meaning as "by grace are ye saved through faith" (Eph. 2:8)
7. Penalty means the Lord has actually "delivered us from the wrath to come" (1Th. 1:10).

### **The Two Sides of Salvation**

#### **(a) God's side of Salvation**

1. Because Christ suffered in my stead, I go free;
2. Because He died, I live!
3. Because He was forsaken of God, I am accepted and reconciled to God.

#### **(b) Human side of Salvation**

On the human side, repentance and faith has to be exercised to experience salvation.

#### Condemnation and Justification

1. Condemnation means that is charged with a crime
2. His guilt is established, and accordingly the law pronounces upon him sentence of punishment.
3. Justification means that the accused is found to be guiltless
4. The law has nothing against him, and therefore he is acquitted and exonerated,
5. He leaves the court without a stain upon his character.
6. To be "justified from all things" (Act. 13:39) means:
7. The sinner is acquitted and discharged in the Supreme Court of Heaven "There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus" (Rom. 8:1).
8. Justification means to declare or pronounce righteous, up to the Law's requirements.
9. Justification implies that the Law has been fully obeyed.

### **Salvation from The Power of Sin**

- it the greatest confusion of thought prevails, especially among young Christians. Many there are who, having learned that the Lord Jesus is the Savior of sinners,
- Jesus does not remove our sinful nature at salvation
- This sinful nature continues to harass until the Christian seriously doubt if he is saved at all. They are not being saved.
- Even when a person has been regenerated and justified, the flesh or corrupt nature remains within him, and ceaselessly harasses him.
- To the saints at Rome Paul said, "Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body" (Rom. 6:12),

- Writing to the Corinthian saints he said, "Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God" (2Co. 7:1)

### **MAN CREATED IN A STATE OF INNOCENCE**

- Everything God created including man was perfect (Gen. 1:31)
  - Gen 1:31 And God saw everything that he had made, and behold, it was very good. And there was evening and there was morning, the sixth day.
- God created man in His own image and likeness
  - Gen 1:26 Then God said, "Let us make man in our image, after our likeness. And let them have dominion over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the heavens and over the livestock and over all the earth and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth."
  - Gen 1:27 So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them.
- Man demonstrated he could be like God
  - Gen 2:19 Now out of the ground the LORD God had formed every beast of the field and every bird of the heavens and brought them to the man to see what he would call them. And whatever the man called every living creature, that was its name.

NB: God brought His creation to man for Adam to name them.

- God approved names given by Adam to what He created
- Man had regular visitations from God
  - Gen 3:8 And they heard the sound of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and the man and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God among the trees of the garden.
- In God Realm: Man was by then operating in a higher frequency than today
- Man was next to God on earth
- Man was to have dominion over all
  - Gen 1:28 And God blessed them. And God said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth and subdue it and have dominion over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the heavens and over every living thing that moves on the earth."
- The Psalmist prophetically declared the state of man
  - Psalm 8:4 what is man that you are mindful of him, and the son of man that you care for him?
  - Psalm 8:5 Yet you have made him a little lower than the heavenly beings and crowned him with glory and honor.

- Psalm 8:6 You have given him dominion over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet.
- Psalm 82:6 I said, "You are gods, sons of the Most High, all of you;
- This image and likeness of God in man fell, it became marred after the fall
  - Gen 3:17 And to Adam he said.., cursed is the ground because of you; in pain you shall eat of it all the days of your life;
  - Gen 3:18 thorns and thistles it shall bring forth for you; and you shall eat the plants of the field.
  - Gen 3:19 By the sweat of your face you shall eat bread, till you return to the ground, for out of it you were taken; for you are dust, and to dust you shall return."
- Originally, man was created not to die, but death became man's final destiny (Gen. 3:16)
- Death reigned over all due to the fall of Adam
  - Rom. 5:17 For if, because of one man's trespass, death reigned through that one man, much more will those who receive the abundance of grace and the free gift of righteousness reign in life through the one man Jesus Christ.
- Eternal life regained in Christ (Rom. 5:17)
- God is giving us a better image than first given to Adam
- To conform to His Son's image
  - Rom 8:29 For those whom he foreknew he also predestined to be conformed to the image of his Son, in order that he might be the firstborn among many brothers.

### **BELIEVERS SHALL EVENTUALLY BE JUSTIFIED AND GLORIFIED**

1. Regeneration
  - Salvation from the pleasure and power and love of sin takes place at our regeneration – new birth.
2. Justification
  - Declared and made righteous in the sight of God as never sinned before.
  - Salvation from the penalty or punishment of sin occurs at our justification
3. Sanctification
  - Salvation from the power or dominion of sin is accomplished during our practical sanctification.
  - Set apart or declare holy. Free from sin; to consecrate or purify.
4. Glorification
  - Transformed to be like Christ on the resurrection day.
  - Salvation from the presence of sin is consummated at our glorification.
  - Salvation from the Pleasure of Sin is a Foretaste of the glory to come.

- The church to reach the fullness of Christ
  - Eph. 4:13 Until we all attain to the unity of the faith and of the knowledge of the Son of God, to mature manhood, to the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ.
- The Father will love us with the same love He loved the Son
  - John 17:23 I in them and you in me, that they may become perfectly one, so that the world may know that you sent me and loved them even as you loved me.
- We will be where the Son is
  - John 14:3 And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and will take you to myself, that where I am you may be also.
- 1Cor. 15:42-44
  - But it is written of the believer's body, "It is sown in corruption, it is raised in incorruption; it is sown in dishonor, it is raised in glory; it is sown in weakness, it is raised in power; it is sown a natural body, it is raised a spiritual body"
  - Glorification shall eventually consume the presence of sin in the believer
  - Rom 8:30 And those whom he predestined he also called, and those whom he called he also justified, and those whom he justified he also glorified.
  - Glorification will make it possible for the church appear as never have sinned before Christ
  - Eph. 5:27 so that he might present the church to himself in splendor, without spot or wrinkle or any such thing, that she might be holy and without blemish.

### **SALVATION FROM THE PRESENCE OF SIN**

- We now turn to that aspect of our subject which has to do solely with the future.
- Sin is yet to be completely eradicated from the believer's being, so that he shall appear before God without any spot or blemish.
- The struggle between the spirit nature and the sinful nature will cease.
- It is the spirit nature which will remain
- True, this is his legal status even now, yet it has not become so in his state or experience.
- We shall enter into full salvation
- "He appear the second time without sin unto salvation" (Heb. 9:28).
- "We are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation, ready to be revealed at the last time" (1Pet. 1:5),
- We shall be forever rid of the very presence of sin.
- The believer still has the carnal nature within him

- But the believer in Christ also has another nature within him which is received at the new birth: "that which is born of the Spirit is spirit" (John 3:6).
- The believer, then, has two natures within him: one which is sinful, the other which is spiritual.
- These two natures being totally different in character, are antagonistic (in conflict) to each other.
- To this antagonism or conflict the apostle referred when he said, "The flesh lusteth against the spirit, and the spirit against the flesh" (Gal. 5:17).

### SALVATION STEPS

- Called by God, regeneration, justification, repentance, and belief all happen simultaneously (Rom. 8:28-30)
- The sinner must be divinely quickened before he can believe to be saved (Eph. 2:1-2)
- Difference between Arminianism and Calvinism
  1. Arminianism – Salvation revolves round the sinner (believe before forgiveness)
  2. Calvinism – Salvation revolves round God (He calls: election before regeneration, God makes the sinner capable to believe).
- **Rom 8:29** For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate *to be* conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.
- **Rom 8:30** Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified.

### SALVATION IN THREE STAGES

Salvation Eternal: Past, Present and Future

1. Past: We have been saved (Redemption, Justification)
2. Present: We are being saved (Sanctification)
3. Future: We shall be saved (Glorification)

### ELECTION

- Election is God exercising His mercy and grace to save some before the beginning of time.
- Election is God's business not man's. God alone know who are the elect. As God who knows the end from the beginning and the beginning from the end, He obviously knows those who shall be saved and those who shall not be saved. If He does not know, then He is not God.

- There is no grounds for any complaints against God for choosing or not choosing certain people because no one deserves to be saved.
- Election is God exercising His sovereign power without personal merit to anyone.
- Even the elect need to exercise saving faith in order to be saved (Rom. 1:16; John 3:36).
- God's sovereign election and salvation by faith are both scriptural and should be accepted as truth by faith. The fact that we may not understand election does not nullify its truth.
- You don't need to understand the way a car works before you drive it.
- The Bible is not a book to be fully understood from Genesis to Revelation.

### **BIBLICAL PASSAGES ON ELECTION**

- Ephesians 1:4-6, 11
- Rom. 9:11-24
- Acts 13:48
- John 6:44
- John 17:1-6, 12
- 1Pet. 1:1-2
- 2Pet. 1:3
- 2Tim. 2:10
- Rev. 3:5
- Rev. 13:8
- Rev. 17:8
- Rev. 20:15
- Rev. 21:27

### **OTHER MEANINGS OF ELECTION**

- **Predestination:** The doctrine that God has ordained all that will happen, especially with regard to the salvation of some and not others. Associated with the teachings of St Augustine of Hippo and of Calvin. It is not used in Scripture as regarding the lost. Thus, God has not preordained anybody to be lost, perhaps except Judas Iscariot.
  - Rom. 8:28-30
  - Eph. 1:5, 11
  - Phil. 3:20-21
- **Foreknowledge:** Awareness of something before it happens or exists. It means God knows in advance those who will believe in Him. But God's foreknowledge does not cause them or influence their believe.
  - 1Pet. 1:1-2

- John 10:14-16
- **Calling:** This refers to God drawing somebody to Himself for salvation. But God never overpowers the will of a person or forces him to be saved. However, if God is doing the calling, His will shall eventually prevail over the person without force.
  - Isaiah 55:1-2
  - John 6:44
  - John 12:32

## QUESTION

**MTh. Students write 2Page report. BTh. Students write 1Page report on the following questions**

1. Does election abolish the need for evangelism?
2. Oh yes, whether I respond to the call to be a pastor or not, those who God will save would be saved. Discuss!
3. What sends people to hell? Is it by means of God's election?

## GOD'S INITIATIVE TO SAVE MAN

### Man's attempt

- Man first attempted to cover up his sin by running away from God (Gen. 3:8-9).
- Since then, man has either been running away from God or is making several failed attempts to cover up his sins.
- Being good cannot save anyone. Man's righteousness in relation to God is as filthy rags (Isaiah 64:6; Matt. 5:20).
- Doing good cannot save anyone either (Eph. 2:8-9; Gal. 2:15-16, 21).
- Religious heritage can neither save anyone (Rom. 2:25-29; Rom. 1:16).
- Man's knowledge cannot save him (1Cor. 2:14; 1Cor. 1:18-23).

## GOD'S WAY

1. The Scriptures clearly states that only God can save, and that apart from Him, salvation is impossible.
  - a. Isaiah 59:1-4, 15-21
  - b. Luke 18:23-27
  - c. Rom. 5:6-8
2. God was not at fault, yet He took the first step to provide a means to bring man back to Himself.
3. God promised that the seed of the woman will crush Satan (Gen. 3:15).
4. God covered Adam and Eve's sin by killing a lamb (Gen. 3:21).
5. God used the ark to save the then world from the penalty of sin but only Noah and his household obeyed (Gen. 6:17-18).



6. God promised to bless the world through the seed of Abraham (Gen. 12:3; Gal. 3:13-18).
7. God provided a substitute – nobody knows where the ram came from to take the place of Isaac, just as Jesus took our place (Gen. 22:12-19).
8. God used the Passover lamb, which was a typology of Christ to save Israel from the angel of death and to punish Egypt (Exodus 12:21-30; Heb. 11:28).
9. The Day of Atonement is typology of what Christ was to do (Lev. 16:1-34)
10. God's hand was in the death of Christ who was slain before the foundation of the world (Rev. 13:8; 1Pet. 1:19-20).
11. God's plan of redemption was planned in the eternal past and wasn't after the fall (Eph. 1:3-14; Acts 2:22-24).
12. God sent Christ to die while we were still sinners. Thus, before Adam sinned, God still loved (Rom. 5:8; John 1:29).
13. God first loved us and nobody knows when the love of God for humanity started (1John 4:7-10; John 3:16; Mark 10:45).
14. God took the initiative to reconcile man back to Himself (2Cor. 5:16-19).

### **MEANS OF SALVATION**

- Salvation is by grace alone, through faith alone, in Christ Jesus alone (Eph. 2:8-9).
  1. Grace is receiving a favor we do not deserve from God.
  2. Grace is receiving a gift we did not work for.
  3. Faith is the only means to apply the blood of Christ for the remission of sins.
  4. Faith is the only means to receive Jesus Christ as Savior and Lord.
  5. Faith is asking God to save based on His Word and believing He will (John 5:24).
  6. Faith is the only means by which man can come back and be accepted by God (Heb. 11:6).
  7. People in the Old Testament were either saved by grace or by faith.
  8. Faith in Christ is the sole requirement for salvation (John 3:16; John 17:3; Acts 10:43).
  9. Some were saved by faith (Gen. 15:6; Hab. 2:4; Heb. 11:1-2).
  10. Noah was saved by grace (Gen. 6:8).
  11. In the Old Testament, grace and faith worked before the coming of the Law.

### **CONTENTS OF SAVING FAITH**

1. Saving faith is believing that you are a sinner and cannot save yourself.
2. Saving faith includes accepting that you are lost.
3. Saving faith includes believing that Jesus Christ is Lord (Rom. 10:9-10).

4. Saving faith includes believing that Jesus Christ died on the cross as a substitute for our sins; and that He was buried and rose on the third day (1Cor. 15:3-5).
5. Saving faith includes repentance.
6. Repentance means to turn away from your sins, and faith means to turn to God (Acts 26:20).
7. Therefore, repent and believe means turn away from sin, and turn toward God (Mark 1:14-15).

## **FOUNDATION OF SALVATION**

God Himself is the source and founder of salvation.

Salvation is founded on three aspects of God's character:

1. God's love – it's the failing unconditional commitment of God to man not based on ethnic origin or any favor (John 3:16; John 15:12-13).
2. God's mercy – the withholding by God of the punishment we deserve (Rom. 9:10-18; Jude 1:21).
3. God's grace – the granting by God of undeserved favor (Eph. 2:4-10; Titus 2:11).

No man is saved based upon personal merit, religious heritage or by works.

## **BASIS OF SALVATION – THE CROSS**

Without the shedding of blood, there is no forgiveness of sins (Heb. 9:22). It is the shed blood of Jesus on the cross which has made it possible for God to forgive sins of men.

Heb. 9:7

Heb. 9:13-14, 22

Heb. 10:19-20

## **THE ROLE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT IN SALVATION**

- The Holy Spirit activates the new birth or regeneration (John 3:5-8).
- The Holy Spirit convicts the world of sin. He makes them aware of their sinful situation (John 16:8-12).
- The Holy Spirit cleanses from sin and brings new life (Titus 3:5).

## **RESULTS OF SALVATION**

### **Adoption**

- Legally take (another's child) and bring it up as one's own. The adopted receives all the rights and privileges of the family he is adopted into.
- The believer now has God as his instead of Satan.

- The believer has 24-hour access to the Father without restrictions.
  - Gal. 4:1-7
  - John 1:12-13
  - Rom. 8:14-16
  - Rom. 5:1-2
  - Heb. 4:14-16

### **Justification**

- Under justification, Christ paid the penalty of sin and the condemnation of eternal death is reversed.
- The effect of Adam's sin on the sinner is reversed.
- It's a legal declaration that the believer is not guilty of sin because Christ has paid the penalty.
- Legally, the righteousness of God is imputed on the believer just as the sin of Adam was imputed of the sinner.
- Therefore, justification means to declare not guilty, and to impart God's righteousness.
  - Rom. 3:21-26
  - Rom. 5:1, 9
  - 2Cor. 5:21
  - Phil. 3:8-9

### **Forgiveness of sins**

- Under justification comes the forgiveness of sins. When God forgives us, it means He no longer holds our sins against us and has pardoned us.
- It means believers no longer stand under the condemnation of sin. Because in Christ there is no condemnation.
- It means you no longer face the wrath of God.
- It means you will not meet your sins again as far as the East is far from the West.
- It means your sins are deeply buried under the depths of the sea.
  - Micah 7:19
  - Psalm 103:12
  - Acts 10:43
  - Eph. 1:7
  - John 3:36
  - Rom. 8:1

### **Regeneration**

- Another gift the believer receives under justification is regeneration.
- It means to be born again or to be given new life or to be born from above.

- It means the believer has received new life from God and has become new creation in Christ.
- It means the believer has become alive to God and dead to sin.
  - John 1:12-13
  - John 3:3-8
  - 1Tim. 3:4-7

### **Sanctification**

- Sanctification means to be cleansed totally from sin.
- To be made holy and righteous
- To be set apart unto God for works of service and ministry
  - 2Pet. 1:9
  - Heb. 9:14
  - 1Cor. 1:30
  - Eph. 1:4
  - 2Cor. 5:21
  - Rom. 1:1
  - Rom. 15:16

Sanctification is divided into:

1. Positional sanctification
2. Practical sanctification

#### **(1) Positional sanctification**

- Positional sanctification is received by the believer at salvation. It's the believer receiving the very righteousness of God. It's the same as positional righteousness.
  - Rom. 8:12-14
  - 1Pet. 1:14-16
  - Heb. 12:10-14

#### **(2) Practical sanctification**

Practical sanctification is the process of being conformed to the image of Christ both in character and conduct in daily living.

It's having the mind of Christ.

Phil. 2:5

Ga. 5:22-23

Phil. 4:7-8

1Tim. 4:12

## **AT SALVATION, BELIEVERS HAVE**

1. Freedom from condemnation of sin
2. Freedom from slavery to sin
3. Freedom from condemnation of sin
4. Freedom from the power of sin and sin nature
5. Freedom from the penalty of sin
6. Freedom from the bondage of the law
7. Freedom from the fear of death

### **Freedom from slavery to sin**

At salvation, believers become slaves to righteousness and not to sin (Rom. 6:17-18).

### **Freedom from the guilt and condemnation of sin**

At salvation, believers no longer stand under the condemnation and guilt of sin (Rom. 8:1).

### **Freedom from the power of sin and sin nature**

At salvation, believers become dead to sin. They become free from the power of the sin nature or the Adamic sin.

The believer does not have to sin anymore. If he sins, it's because he chooses to and not because he has to. This is called redemption (Rom. 6:6-12).

### **Freedom from the penalty of sin**

- The believer no longer faces wrath of God with its eternal punishment, which is explained as the penalty of sin. It is the result of the Adamic sin or the sin nature.
- All those under the curse of the sin nature or the Adamic sin will pay the full price in the lake of fire, which is the second death.
  - Rom. 6:23
  - 1Thess. 5:9

### **Freedom from the bondage of the Law**

- The Law points to sin and reveals the sinfulness of humanity. Believers are free from the restrictions of the law and its numerous and complicated obligations.
  - Rom. 7:5-6
  - Gal. 5:1, 18

### **Free from the fear of death**

- People are subject to life time bondage under death. Christ came to conquer death so that believers would have no fear of death.
  - Heb. 2:14-15
  - 1Cor. 15:54-57

### **Transferred to God's Kingdom**

- At salvation, believers become citizens of heaven or God's kingdom, and become strangers in this world and Satan's kingdom.
- Believers are transferred from the kingdom of darkness to the kingdom of His dear Son.
- Believers have a new King in the person of the Lord Jesus Christ
  - Phil. 3:20
  - Col. 1:13
  - 1Pet. 2:11-12
  - Acts 26:18

### **Made a friend of God**

- The believer is no longer God's enemy but now a friend of God and all the blessings that come with that Father children relationship.
- John 15:14-15
- James 2:23
- James 4:4

### **Joint-Heir with Christ**

- At salvation, believers are destined to share with Christ in all the blessings the Father promised the Son with.
  - Col. 1:12
  - Rom. 8:17
  - Rev. 20:4-5
  - Eph. 2:6-7

### **Blessed with every spiritual blessing**

- In Christ, the believer has been blessed with everything necessary to live a godly life that is acceptable in the sight of God.
  - Eph. 1:3
  - 2Pet. 1:2-4

### **Placed in Christ and indwelt by Christ**

- At salvation, the believer's life is the life of Christ because Christ comes to indwelt in the believer.
- Therefore, the believer is in Christ and Christ is in the believer.
- Believers become members of Christ's body, which is the church.
  - Col. 3:3-4
  - Gal. 2:20

- Rom. 8:9-11
- Rom. 6:3
- Rom. 12:3-8
- 1Cor. 12:12-14, 27

### **Assurance of salvation**

- The believer is secured in Christ whether he knows it or not; believes it or not; or feels it or not.
- However, by faith, the believer can feel assured through the eternal witness of the Spirit.
  - Rom. 8:16
  - 1John 5:11-12
  - Rom. 8:31-39
  - 1Pet. 1:3-5
  - 2Cor. 1:22
  - Eph. 4:30

### **To be glorified and conformed to Christ**

- God's ultimate goal is for the believer to be like Christ.
  - Phil. 3:20-21
  - 1Cor. 15:48-49
  - 2Cor. 3:18
  - Rom. 8:28-30
  - 1John 3:2
  - Rec. 22:1-6





## THE DOCTRINE OF SIN – HARMATIOLOGY

- Grace is the only attribute which saves humanity from the depravity and destruction of sin to eternal life. It's never by works that any person can be saved. It's always been a combination of free grace and faith that breaks the hold of sin.
- Noah was saved by grace (Gen. 6:8).
- Abraham was saved by faith (Gen. 15:6).
- Without grace and faith in Christ Jesus, no one can be saved under the New Covenant.

### ENABLING GRACE (1)

1. The name "Lord Jesus" serves two purposes. First, accept Jesus as Savior and secondly, make Him Lord.
2. Enabling grace enables you accept Jesus as Savior, and live the rest of your life in righteousness.
3. We are saved by grace alone, through faith alone, in Christ Jesus alone (Eph. 2:8-9).
4. Believers walk in entirely new life (Rom. 6:4) .
5. Rom 6:4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.
6. You cannot have fellowship with Him and still walk in darkness.
7. If you still walk in darkness then you have not experience the light at all.
8. You can't walk in both light and darkness at the same time.
9. Either you are in darkness or in the light.
10. The two are simply disagree (incompatible).
11. Enabling grace enables you to Repent.
12. Repentance" means to turn away **FROM** your SIN
13. Enabling grace enables you to have faith
14. "Faith" means to turn **TO** GOD.
15. So you turn FROM SIN and turn TO GOD
16. Repentance and Faith are two sides of the same coin. They are different but the same purpose.
17. You can't turn from your sin and still remain in it.
18. And neither can you turn to God and remain in your sin.
19. You can't have the two at the same time.
20. They are two different kingdoms (Col. 1:13)
21. Always there must be evidence of being saved.
22. The moment repentance and faith take place, there must be evidence
23. If you are saved and have nothing to show amounts to carnal Christianity

24. Faith alone separated Martin Luther from the Catholic Church.
25. It is saving faith proved by living faith
26. Carnal Christians are those who after being saved by faith, refuse to live the rest of their life by faith.
27. They accept Jesus as their Savior, but not as Lord.
28. Make Jesus Christ both Savior and Lord (Acts 2:36)
29. the disciples were called "Christians" (LIKE CHRIST)

*Acts 11:26 And when he had found him, he brought him unto Antioch. And it came to pass, that a whole year they assembled themselves with the church and taught much people. And the disciples were called Christians first in Antioch.*

*Philip. 4:13 I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me.*

*1John 1:6 If we say that we have fellowship with him, and walk in darkness, we lie, and do not the truth. KJV*

## **UNDERSTANDING JUSTIFICATION AND SANCTIFICATION**

1. Rom 5:18 Therefore as by the offence of one *judgment came* upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one *the free gift came* upon all men unto justification of life.
2. Every Christian is justified once, but goes through progressive or systematic sanctification every day.
3. What justification does is that it removes the guilt.
4. Guilt is what makes you feel bad after committing the sin.
5. In court of law, when you are guilty, it means you deserve to be punished.
6. Guilt before God means you are worthy to be blamed and punished.
7. But sanctification removes the sin or pollution and renews you.
8. So, if you are truly justified, you don't have to feel bad anymore.
8. You are totally cleansed if you repent of sins committed
9. Again, justification takes place outside the sinner, while sanctification takes place inside or the inner life.
10. Justification is entirely God's work, while we cooperate with God in sanctification.
11. Justification makes you perfect in this life, while with sanctification, you are still striving to be perfect.
12. Justification is the same in all Christians, while with sanctification, it's greater in some than others.

13. Justification is initial sanctification; it's the starting point; it's set apart and chosen in Christ. While sanctification develops, progresses gradually to glorification.
- Rev 1:5 And from Jesus Christ, *who is* the faithful witness, *and* the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,
  - Rev 1:6 And hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father; to him *be* glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.

## **LET GRACE SPEAK**

- *John 1:16 For from his fullness we have all received, grace upon grace. ESV*

### **Grace paved way for Esther**

- Esther 2:17 The king loved Esther more than all the women, and she won grace and favor in his sight more than all the virgins, so that he set the royal crown on her head and made her queen instead of Vashti.

### **Grace levels Mountains**

- Zech. 4:7 Who are you, O great mountain? Before Zerubbabel you shall become a plain. And he shall bring forward the top stone amid shouts of 'Grace, grace to it!'"

### **Grace will cause Israel to Look unto the Messiah**

- Zech. 12:10 "And I will pour out on the house of David and the inhabitants of Jerusalem a spirit of grace and pleas for mercy, so that, when they look on me, on him whom they have pierced, they shall mourn for him, as one mourns for an only child, and weep bitterly over him, as one weeps over a firstborn.

### **Grace makes you testify of Jesus Chris**

- Acts 4:33 And with great power the apostles were giving their testimony to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and great grace was upon them all.

### **Grace makes you perform miracles**

- Acts 6:8 And Stephen, full of grace and power, was doing great wonders and signs among the people.
- Your gift combined with grace will one day introduce you if no one does:
- Gift and grace brought Joseph from prison
- Gift combined with grace can bring you from the village to prominence

**Pursue GRACE:**

1. Grace makes laws irrelevant!
2. Grace makes protocols unworkable!
3. Grace makes connections useless!
4. Grace silences powers!
5. Grace reverses condemnation!
6. Grace deletes hopelessness!
7. Grace overrules iniquity!
8. Grace grants open doors!
9. Grace makes God select you among the rest!
10. Grace makes you gain favor before God!
11. Grace makes you unique or different from everyone!
12. We are saved by grace alone!
13. Grace makes you overcome sin!
14. Grace makes things easier!
15. Grace makes struggles cease!
16. It is only in Christ that we receive grace upon grace. May grace lead you seek Christ.

**THE REALITY OF SIN**

Believe it or not; preach it or not; accept it or not; the awful fact is that sin is real, and we see its impact and consequences in our daily life. This has led to some people developing wrong view of sin.

**WRONG VIEW OF SIN**

- That sin is comparative. It means even if I am a sinner, somebody's sin is greater than mine, so I am okay.
- That what somebody sees as sin is not sin to me.
- That sin itself is not real. It's only an imagination, illusion, deception, trickery make-believe or fantasy.

**WHAT THE BIBLE TEACHES**

- The Bible teaches that sin is real (1John 1:8; Gen. 4:7).
- The Bible teaches that sin causes death and destruction (Rom. 6:23; James 1:5).
- The Bible teaches that sin separates man from God (Isaiah 59:1-2).
- The Bible teaches that sin is directed toward God not msn (Gen. 39:9; Psalm 51:3-5).

## **SOURCE OF SIN**

1. Scripture teaches that sin, or iniquity or wickedness was found in Satan not God (Ezekiel 28:15-16).
2. Satan tricked Adam to sin (Gen. 3:6).
3. Sin entered the world through the disobedience of Adam. He chose to obey Satan rather than God (Rom. 5:12).
4. God did not create sin. He allows sin, adversity and evil to exist because He knows the end from the beginning and has a purpose for everything.
5. Based on the foregoing background, the Bible did not state how sin got into Satan.

## **DESCRIPTION OF SIN**

1. It's difficult to define sin. However, it's simply an action which is contrary to the character of a Holy God.
2. Sin is unlike God and causes people to be unlike God.
3. Sin is deception
4. Sin is the devil appearing like an angel of light
5. Sin is hypocrisy
6. Sin is evil and wrong doing no matter how much it is hailed by society

Sin can be categorized under two headings:

- Sins of omission
- And sins of commission

## **SINS OF OMISSION**

Sins of omission are sins we commit and don't know they are sins in the sight of God.

Examples:

1. Irresponsible behavior
2. Prayerlessness
3. The good we are supposed to do and can't do or failing to do what is right (James 4:17)
4. Not worshipping God
5. Becoming your own god
6. Lovers of self (2Tim. 3:2)
7. Boastful, arrogant, abusive among others (2Tim. 3:2)
8. Worshipping money instead of God (Matt. 6:24).
9. Thinking you are on your own and you owe allegiance to no one
10. Thinking it's through your personal efforts and strength that you got what you have and don't need to help anyone.

11. 1Cor. 4:7 For who makes you superior? What do you have that you did not receive? And if you did receive it, why do you boast as though you did not receive it?
12. Going astray (Isaiah 53:6)
13. Thinking you can choose to do what you like and many more.
14. Living independently of God
15. Falling short of God's glory (Rom. 3:23)
16. Not praying for others (1Sam 12:23)

### **SINS OF COMMISSION**

Sins of commission are sins we commit and know that they are sins. Thus, they are sins deliberately or intentionally committed against God and fellow men.

Examples:

1. Disobedience (1Sam. 28:18)
2. Rebellion against God
3. Insisting on your right not to worship God
4. Lawlessness (1John 3:4)
5. Godlessness (Rom. 1:18)
6. Unrighteousness (Rom. 3:5)
7. Transgression (Rom. 2:23)
8. Iniquity (Psalm 51:2)

Passages which talk about specific sins in the Bible

- Gal. 5:19-21
- Rom. 13:8-13
- Rom. 1:29
- Ephesians 4:29-32; 5:4
- 1Cor. 10:1-10
- James 2:8-10
- Exodus 20:1-17
- Rom. 1:26-27
- Mark 7:20-23

1Tim. 6:6-10

Sin can be related to:

What we do and what we don't do

Thoughts

Actions

Attitudes

Omissions (what we don't know or think it is sin)

## **STRATEGY AND NATURE OF SIN**

The strategy and nature of sin is to:

### **Deceive**

It comes in a less serious manner. It makes the sinner think the sin has no impact or carries no serious consequences.

1Tim. 2:11-14

2Cor. 11:3

1Thess. 2:10

Gal. 6:7-8

### **Enslave and control**

Continuous sin enslaves the sinner. It controls his mind and directs his activities. It steals the sinner and makes him lose control. It kills his conscience and makes grievous sin appear to be no sin at all.

John 8:34

Rom. 6:16-19

Titus 3:3

### **Destroy**

Sin eventually destroys the sinner. He is damaged beyond repairs unless Christ intervenes. Sin has the weight to destroy the body, soul and spirit.

James 1:13-16

Rom. 3:9-18

Rom. 6:23

Phil. 3:18-19

## **RESULTS OF SIN**

What is the condition of man after the fall? Man became unsaved and suffered the following consequences:

### **Separated from God**

Enemies of God (Rom. 5:10)

Alienated from God – broken friendship and fellowship (Col. 1:21)

Separated and hidden from God (Isaiah 59:2; Gen. 3:9-10)

### **Death**

The soul that sins shall die (Ezek. 18:1-4)

Dead in transgressions and sins (Eph. 2:1)  
 Ungodly (Rom. 5:6)  
 Sinners (Rom. 5:8)

### **In Adam – all died and became cursed and condemned**

Rom. 5:12, 18  
 1Cor. 15:21-22

### **All became lost and without hope**

Separated from Christ (Eph. 2:12)  
 Without hope in God (Eph. 2:19)

### **Physical and spiritual death**

1. Sin brought death and God's judgment (Rom. 5:16-18)
2. Sin puts all under condemnation (Rom. 8:1)
3. Sin made all target of God's wrath (Eph. 2:3)
4. All unbelievers stand condemned (John 3:18)

### **Members of Satan's kingdom**

All unsaved people are members of Satan's kingdom with Satan as their father and leader.

John 8:42-47  
 Col. 1:13-14

### **Destined for eternal lake of fire**

Judgment and eternal punishment is the fate of all who reject God.  
 John 3:16, 36  
 1Thess. 1:6-10

### **In conclusion:**

Man without God is totally sinful, utterly lost, condemned and destined for eternal punishment. Man is bound to pay the eternal penalty of sin if not saved.

### **SIN AND THE UNBELIEVER**

All men stand condemned under sin because of these three things:

- Inherited sin nature
- Imputed sins
- Personal sins



**(1) Inherited sin nature**

- When Adam sinned, all men became sinners not by choice but by nature, and that sin nature is passed from parents to children. For example, nobody taught Cain how to kill but he naturally killed his brother with ease.
- The fallen image of God in man became man's sinful nature.
- The sin nature is that natural attitude in man that is bent away from God and inclined toward self and sin.
- Man, henceforth became separated from God. This is called spiritual death.
  - Rom. 5:19
  - Eph. 2:3
  - Psalm 51:5
- The death of Christ on the cross is the only cure for this sin nature. By Christ being condemned in the flesh through His death brought God's righteous nature to man.
  - 2Cor. 5:21
  - Gal. 5:24
  - Rom. 8:3-5
  - Col. 2:11

**(2) Imputed sin**

- When Adam sinned, God charged his sin to all men who would be born after him so that everybody became judicially guilty of sin.
- The result of imputed sin is physical death – for as in Adam all die.
- Imputed sin caused all men to come under the curse of physical death.
  - 1Cor. 15:22
  - Rom. 5:12-14

**The cure for imputed sin:****Justification**

- This is an act whereby the righteousness of Christ is equally imputed or credited to the believer.
- Without Christ all men stand charged with sin and its penalty – physical death.
  - 2Cor. 5:21
  - Rom. 4:22-25

**Resurrection of Christ**

- The bodily resurrection of Christ guarantees victory over physical death
  - Rom. 6:4
  - 1Cor. 15:12-22, 54-58

### **(3) Personal sins**

- Man's personal sins confirm that the sin nature of Adam is indeed transferred to all people. It also confirms the condemnation and justice of God in declaring all to be sinners.
  - Rom. 3:9-18, 23
  - Rev. 20:11-15
- The result of personal sins is spiritual death
- Ezek. 18:1-4, 19-20
  - Rom. 6:23
  - Rom. 8:13
- The antidote for personal sins is the forgiveness provided by the blood of Christ on the cross.
  - Eph. 1:7
  - Col. 2:13-15

### **In conclusion**

- With the Adamic sin nature in man: Redemption is needed – thus the complete death of Christ.
- With imputed sin: Justification is needed where the righteousness of Christ imputed on the believer cancels the Adamic sin imputed on the believer.
- Personal sins: It confirms that Adam's sin nature is in man and proofs that all men are sinners. Under personal sins, man claims forgiveness in the blood of Christ on the cross. So if a redeemed believer sins, he doesn't go through the redemption process again, he only claims forgiveness and cleansing through the blood of Christ. We start with the next topic, sin and the believer.

### **Sin and the believer**

- The personal sins of the believer – past had been forgiven.
- The personal sins of the believer – present are forgiven under confession.
- The future sins of the believer shall be forgiven when confessed.
  - Col. 1:14
  - 1John 1:7-9

### **The imputed sin and the believer**

- The imputed sin of the believer causes physical death had been catered for in the resurrection of Christ. Therefore, the believer shall rise again at the resurrection day and his physical body becomes immortal.
  - John 11:25-26

- 1Cor. 15:20-22

### **What about the believer's sin nature inherited from Adam?**

- The curse of sin is not removed until the eternal state.
- It means the old Adamic sin nature is not destroyed until the final resurrection where the believer is resurrected with a glorified body. Immortality takes over mortality.
- The old sin nature had been judged and condemned at the death of Christ on the cross, but it's not removed yet. It shall be destroyed at the final resurrection. Flesh and blood cannot enter heaven.
  - Rom. 8:1-4
  - Rev. 22:3
  - 1Cor. 15:20

### **WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS ABOUT THE BELIEVER'S SIN NATURE AND PERSONAL SINS**

1. The believer is dead to sin. Thus, dead to the Adamic sin nature.
2. The believer does not have to sin anymore – personal sins (1John 2:4).
3. The believer has been separated from the power of his Adamic sin nature which is not yet destroyed.
4. The power of the Holy Spirit enables the believer not to sin (1John 3:6).
  - Rom. 6:1-14
  - Rom. 8:5-14
5. The sin of the believer breaks his fellowship with God but not as God's child (1John 1:3-6).
6. True believers will not walk in sin as a continual way of life (1John 3:9-10).
7. The believer should accept by faith that he is dead to the power of the old sin nature.
8. The believer must rely on the power of the indwelling Holy Spirit to resist sin.
9. With the new nature of the believer, which is God's righteousness, he must be able to fight against the old (Adamic) sin nature, which is the flesh and be victorious.
10. A believer who sins must claim forgiveness through the blood of Christ by faith (1John 1:7-9).
11. To overcome sin, the believer must choose to walk in the Spirit daily:
  - 1Pet. 1:13-16
  - 1Pet. 2:11-12
  - Rom. 7:14-25
  - Gal. 5:13-26
  - Col. 3:5-10; 2Cor. 7:1; Heb. 12:4

## ANGELOLOGY – DOCTRINE OF ANGELS

### DEMONIC AND SPIRITUAL WARFARE CHALLENGE

1. It is clear from Scriptures that we are engaged in spiritual warfare with unseen forces (Eph. 6:10-18).
2. The Spirit led Jesus into the wilderness: a place we'll not like to be (Luke 3:1).
3. Jesus was led to this particular situation when he was filled by the Spirit (Luke 3:1).
4. The anointing that you are praying for attracts the devil. The moment David was anointed, the Philistines gathered forces against him (2 Sam. 5:3; 17-19).
5. If the LORD'S anointing is upon your life as a pastor, forces of darkness will surely confront you. Alexander challenged Paul.
6. 1Tim.1:18 I am setting before you this instruction, Timothy *my* child, in accordance with the prophecies spoken long ago about you, in order that by them you may fight the good fight,
7. 1Tim. 1:19 having faith and a good conscience, which some, *because they* have rejected *these*, have suffered shipwreck concerning their faith,
8. 1Tim. 1:20 among whom are Hymenaeus and Alexander, whom I have handed over to Satan, in order that they may be taught not to blaspheme.
9. 2Tim. 4:14 Alexander the metalworker did me much harm; may the Lord pay back to him according to his deeds,
10. These satanic forces pose such a huge challenge and sometimes make some pastors abandon the ministry. Paul admonished Archippus to complete his ministry.
11. Col. 4:17 And say to Archippus, take heed to the ministry which thou hast received in the Lord, that thou fulfil it.
12. Satan can fight against ministry opportunities or close ministry doors.
13. 1Cor. 16:9 For a great and effective door has opened for me, and there are many opponents.

### SATAN CAN MOVE LEADERS TO DISOBEY THE LORD

1. Now Satan stood up against Israel and moved David to number Israel (1 Chron. 21:1).
2. Satan might have spoken through familiar spirit to David and David would have taken that voice to be the voice of God to count Israel (Compare 1Chron. 21:1 to 2Sam. 24:1).
3. In 2Sam. 24:1, The LORD spoke to David, while in 1Chron. 21:1, Satan incited David. The voice in 2Sam. 24:1 might have been a wrong voice which deceived David.

4. 2Sam. 24:1 Again Yahweh *was* angry with Israel, and he incited David against them, saying, "Go count Israel and Judah."
5. 1Chron. 21:1 Then Satan stood against Israel and urged David to count Israel.
6. This sin brought untold calamities to David and Israel, and 70,000 Israelites fell. (1 Chron. 21:9-10; 14-15).
7. It was Satan who moved the heart of King Saul to turn back on the word of the LORD. God rejected him as king over His people (1 Sam. 15:10-11; 22-28).
8. Samson, the anointed leader of God's people played the harlot, and suffered dearly for his lack of self-discipline. He lost the presence of God and had his eyes removed and lost his ministry and never lived to fulfill his divine destiny (Judges 16:18-21).
9. The human race is still paying for the curses Adam's sin brought which is only done away in Christ (Gen. 3:15; Gal. 3:13).
10. Moses couldn't enter the Promised Land when out frustration and anger he struck the Rock twice instead of speaking to it as God commanded (Numbers 20:8-12).
11. Moses and Aaron couldn't enter the Promised Land because they didn't believe and hallow the LORD before the Israelites (Num. 20:12).
12. Satanic spirit was behind the nations which fought against Israel (Exodus 17:8, 14-16).
13. The prophet Daniel had his prayers intercepted by the prince of Persia for 21 days (Dan. 10:12-13).
14. Satanic agent put a thorn in the flesh to hinder the progress of the Apostle Paul (2 Cor. 12:7).
15. Satan hindered Paul again and again (1 Thess. 2:18).
16. The gates of hell will fight against the church but will not prevail (Matt. 16:16-19).
17. The Pastor has the Power to bind and lose
18. The keys to have access to divine authority is given to the pastor (Matt. 16:19).
19. The pastor has unlimited power to bind and lose. What is bound on earth is bound in heaven, and what is loosed on earth is loosed in heaven (Matt. 18:18-20).
20. The twelve disciples were given power and authority over demons (Luke 9:1-2).
21. Signs and wonders were to follow those who believe to the point that if they drink any deadly thing, it will not hurt them (Mark 16:15-20).
22. The seventy disciples were given unlimited power of attorney to destroy all the works of the devil and nothing shall by in any means hurt them (Luke 10:19).
23. Any pastor taking spiritual warfare for granted makes himself vulnerable to the forces of darkness.
24. As pastors, we have been positioned and anointed by the LORD Jesus Christ to lead the church into spiritual warfare.

## **NATURE AND WORK OF DEMONS**

1. They can be exorcized (Matt. 12:24; Mark 5:12-13).
2. They can influence world leaders (1 Chron. 21:1).
3. They promote sin among unbelievers (2 Cor. 4:4).
4. They tempt believers and pastors to sin. (Acts 5:3).
5. They falsely pose as Christians and angels of light. They can use fellow pastors to change your divine agenda. Remember the story of the man of God from Judah and the old prophet (2 Cor. 11:14; 1 Kings 13:1-30).
6. Demons are powerful (Acts 19:13-16).
7. Demons are intelligent. This demon possessed man knew his name [Legion], and he knows that they were many. The demons were able to communicate with Jesus (Luke 8:26-32).
8. Demons are emotional (James 2:19).
9. Demons have names (Mark 5:9; Luke 8:30-31).
10. Demons are subject to God's authority (Luke 9:42-43).
11. Demons can possess both men and animals (Mark 5:10-14; Luke 8:26-38).
12. Demons can cause physical disease and mental illness (Matt. 9:32; Luke 8:34-36).
13. Demons can influence believers. Satan suggested to Peter disrupt the salvation agenda of Jesus Christ (Matt. 16:21-23).
14. Satan can bind with the spirit of infirmity. He bound a woman for 18 years (Luke 13:16).
15. But demons cannot possess believers due to the presence of the Holy Spirit. The believer is indwelt by the Holy Spirit and demons cannot live alongside the Spirit of God (1 Cor. 6:19; 2 Cor. 6:14-17).

## **THE DEVIL MASTERMINDS DEPRESSION**

### **Depression management in Ministry**

- Depression is a state of low mood; it is a distaste, dislike, hate, and aversion to activity. It affects a person's self-image.
- Other related words for depression include sadness, unhappiness, dumps, dejection, dismals, heavyheartedness, melancholy, mournfulness,

### **Common signs and symptoms of depression**

1. Feelings of helplessness and hopelessness. A bleak outlook—nothing will ever get better and there's nothing you can do to improve your situation.
2. Loss of interest in daily activities. No interest in former hobbies, pastimes, social activities, or sex. You've lost your ability to feel joy and pleasure.
3. Appetite or weight changes. Significant weight loss or weight gain—a change of more than 5% of body weight in a month.

4. Sleep changes. Either insomnia, especially waking in the early hours of the morning, or oversleeping (also known as hypersomnia).
5. Anger or irritability. Feeling agitated, restless, or even violent.
6. Your tolerance level is low, your temper short, and everything and everyone gets on your nerves.
7. Loss of energy. Feeling fatigued, sluggish, and physically drained. Your whole body may feel heavy, and even small tasks are exhausting or take longer to complete.
8. Self-loathing. Strong feelings of worthlessness or guilt. You harshly criticize yourself for perceived faults and mistakes.
9. Reckless behavior. You engage in escapist behavior such as substance abuse, compulsive gambling, reckless driving, or dangerous sports.
10. Concentration problems. Trouble focusing, making decisions, or remembering things.
11. Unexplained aches and pains. An increase in physical complaints such as headaches, back pain, aching muscles, and stomach pain.

### **DEPRESSION AND SUICIDE**

1. Depression is a major risk factor for suicide.
2. The deep despair and hopelessness that goes along with depression can make suicide feel like the only way to escape the pain.
3. Thoughts of death or suicide are a serious symptom of depression, so take any suicidal talk or behavior seriously.
4. It's not just a warning sign that the person is thinking about suicide: it's a cry for help.
5. Warning signs of suicide include:
6. Talking about killing or harming one's self.
7. Expressing strong feelings of hopelessness or being trapped.
8. An unusual preoccupation with death or dying.
9. Acting recklessly, as if they have a death wish (e.g. speeding through red lights)
10. Calling or visiting people to say goodbye.
11. Getting affairs in order (giving away prized possessions, tying up loose ends).
12. Saying things like "Everyone would be better off without me" or "I want out."
13. A sudden switch from being extremely depressed to acting calm and happy.

### **TYPES OF DEPRESSION**

- Un-clinical Depression
- Clinical Depression

### Un-clinical symptoms of Depression

This work is attributed to Wings of Madness and Creative Commons website.

1. Things just seem “off” or “wrong”.
2. You don’t feel hopeful or happy about anything in your life.
3. You’re crying a lot for no apparent reason, either at nothing, or something that normally would be insignificant.
4. You feel like you’re moving (and thinking) in slow motion.
5. Getting up in the morning requires a lot of effort.
6. Carrying on a normal conversation is a struggle. You can’t seem to express yourself.
7. You’re having trouble making simple decisions.
8. Your friends and family **really** irritate you.
9. You’re not sure if you still love your spouse/significant other.
10. Smiling feels stiff and awkward. It’s like <http://www.wingofmadness.com/what-does-depression-feel-like-446>
11. It seems like there’s a glass wall between you and the rest of the world.
12. You’re forgetful, and it’s very difficult to concentrate on anything.
13. You’re anxious and worried a lot.
14. Everything seems hopeless.
15. You feel like you can’t do anything right.
16. You have recurring thoughts of death and/or suicidal impulses. Suicide seems like a welcome relief.
17. You have a feeling of impending doom – you think something bad is going to happen, although you may not be sure what, and/or...
18. ...You have a very specific fear that torments you constantly.
19. In your perception of the world around you, it’s always cloudy. Even on sunny days, it seems cloudy and gray.
20. You feel as though you’re drowning or suffocating.
21. You’re agitated, jumpy and anxious much of the time.
22. Your senses seem dulled; food tastes bland and uninteresting, music doesn’t seem to affect you, you don’t bother smelling flowers anymore.
23. Incessantly and uncontrollably into your mind comes the memory of every failure, every bad or uncomfortable experience, interview or date, like a torrent of negativity.



## CLINICAL DEPRESSION

1. Are you depressed?
2. If you identify with several of the following signs and symptoms, and they just won't go away, you may be suffering from clinical depression.
3. You can't sleep or you sleep too much.
4. You can't concentrate or find that previously easy tasks are now difficult.
5. You feel hopeless and helpless.
6. you can't control your negative thoughts, no matter how much you try.
7. You have lost your appetite or you can't stop eating.
8. You are much more irritable, short-tempered, or aggressive than usual.
9. You're consuming more alcohol than normal or engaging in other reckless behavior.
10. You have thoughts that life is not worth living (Seek help *immediately* if this is the case)
11. [http://helpguide.org/mental/depression\\_signs\\_types\\_diagnosis\\_treatment.htm](http://helpguide.org/mental/depression_signs_types_diagnosis_treatment.htm)

## CAUSES OF DEPRESSION

- The exact cause of depression is not known. Many researchers believe it is caused by chemical imbalances in the brain, which may be hereditary or caused by events in a person's life.

### Some contributors to Major Depression:

1. Alcohol or drug abuse
2. Life events or situations, such as: Breaking up with a boyfriend or girlfriend, failing a class, illness or death in the family, or parents divorcing (for adolescents).
3. Childhood events, such as abuse or neglect.
4. The judges – the case of Gideon: he had a poor self-image; low self-esteem;
5. He was in hiding when the angel of the LORD appeared to give him a boost (Judg. 6:11-18).
6. The woman with twelve years issue of blood – she spent all her living but rather, her situation got worse.
7. Jesus' restorative words of "Go in peace and be healed of your affliction" clearly shows the depressed state of the woman (Mark 5:25-34).
8. The woman tormented with the spirit of infirmity and held bondage for eighteen years by the devil (Luke 13: 11-16).
9. Jesus Christ in the garden of Gethsemane and on the cross – Jesus began to be very sorrowful and deeply distressed.
10. He lacked support from those closer to him but, he was encouraged by ministering angels; on the cross, Jesus felt forsaken by the Father (Matt. 26:36-44; 27:46).
11. David and his six hundred men after the Ziklag attack.

12. The men were completely devastated, dispirited, hopeless, grieved and thought of stoning David.
13. But David made the right move by encouraging himself in the Lord (1 Sam. 30:1-6).
14. The prophet Samuel kept weeping for the demise of King Saul until God intervened (1 Sam. 16:1).
15. Joshua was depressed after death of Moses until God gave the divine order (Josh. 1:1-3).
16. It is important to note that all who went through some kind of depression in the Scriptures came back restored and stronger than before.

### **EFFECTS OF DEPRESSION**

- Depression comes with both physical and emotional ramifications according to Doctors Minirth and Meier. The following are some of their findings:

### **8 PHYSICAL EFFECTS OF DEPRESSION**

1. Insomnia or lack of quality sleep
2. Loss of appetite
3. Weight loss or significant weight gain
4. Irregular menstrual cycle or entire stoppage of menses for months
5. Loss of sexual interest
6. Tension headaches associated by slow body movements
7. Slow metabolic rate
8. A rapid heart beat
9. Shortened attention span – the teen’s mind drifts from what he wants to focus on and becomes increasingly distracted.
10. Daydreaming – losing focus often or being distracted.
11. Withdrawal – the teen’s become very lonely by distancing themselves from peers.
12. Suicidal behavior – some depressed people attempt to kill themselves and to escape life

Manifests depressive tendencies in adulthood – unresolved depression in teen years might continue in adulthood.

### **10 EMOTIONAL EFFECTS OF DEPRESSION**

1. Sad facial expression
2. Moodiness or mood swinging
3. The person looks depressed
4. The person weeps often
5. His eyes are cast down
6. He looks tired

7. He looks discouraged
8. He feels dejected
9. His physical features are strained
10. The depressed gradually loses interest in personal appearance

## **STRESS**

### **THE DEVIL IS THE ARCHITECT OF STRESS**

#### **Stress and Stress Management**

What is Stress?

1. Stress is when you are not in control of events.
2. Stress is a condition experienced when a person perceives that "demands exceed the personal resources".
3. Or when demands exceed social resources the individual is able to mobilize.
4. In short, it's what we feel when we think we've lost control of events.
5. On the other words, stress could also be the result of intense pressure, force, weight, heaviness, strain, nervous tension, demands, difficulty, mental tension, or burden a person suffers.

#### **CAUSES OF STRESS**

1. Several factors lead to the causes of stress. Distress, suffering, sorrow, anguish, agony, grief, misery, harassment, pain, strain, trouble, bother, worry, annoy or disturb.
2. These factors as enumerated are capable to make a pastor to be anxious.
3. Disease may cause stress.

#### **SYMPTOMS (SIGNS) OF STRESS (STRESSORS)**

1. What are the warning signs or indicators to show that one can go through or experience stress?
2. The stress you feel results from how you react to the stressors in life you experience.

#### **STRESSORS INCLUDE LIFE EVENTS SUCH AS:**

1. Job loss in marriage
2. Losing ministry
3. Financial crisis and difficulties in ministry
4. Marital challenges such as period of barrenness
5. Facing terminal diseases or sicknesses in ministry
6. Arguments and conflicts in ministry and marriage

7. A heavy ministry load which affects time with family
8. Combining ministry with heavy school load
9. Lost of a loved one
10. Lost opportunities

### **SYMPTOMS STRESS PRODUCE**

1. Symptoms are warning signs or indicators
2. Stress produces numerous symptoms which vary from one person to another, from one situation to another under different levels of severity.

### **THESE CAN INCLUDE:**

1. Decline of love for spouse and family
2. Loss of job or ministry
3. Lack of self-confidence,
4. Feelings of worthlessness
5. Anxiety, Mental Breakdown
6. Insecurity and physical health decline
7. Divorce as well as depression.

### **UNHEALTHY WAYS TO MANAGE STRESS**

1. Smoking
2. Excessive drinking
3. Excessive eating or under-eating
4. Excessive watching of TV
5. Withdrawing from activities, friends family and ministry
6. Excessive sleeping
7. Blaming others for the stress
8. Procrastination
9. Using pills or drugs to relax

### **LEARNING HEALTHIER WAYS OF STRESS CONTROL**

1. There are several ways of coping with stress in ministries, marriages and individual lives.
2. Some techniques of time management may help a person to control stress.
3. In the face of high demands, effective stress management involves learning to say no to certain requests, set limits and to refuse some demands that others make.
4. The following techniques have been recently dubbed “**Destressitizers**” by The Journal of the Canadian Medical Association:

## **DESTRESSITIZERS**

1. Learn how to say no
2. Avoid people who stress you
3. Know the source of your stress and deal with it
4. Take control over your environment – do not let chatty friends, situations and TV control you
5. Focus on your positive behavior
6. Learn to forgive
7. Do not try to control the uncontrollable
8. Share your feelings
9. Spend time in nature
10. Go for a prayer walk
11. Call or visit a good friend
12. Take a good bath
13. Play any musical instrument if you know how
14. Take a cup of tea, coffee or chocolate
15. Work in your garden
16. Watch a comedy
17. Partake in the worship service of your local church
18. Listening to relaxation, soul inspiring, or gospel music
19. Exercise and relaxation techniques
20. Getting a hobby
21. Meditation
22. Deep breathing

## **CONTROLLING STRESS BY: ENHANCING YOUR SELF-WORTH AND SELF-ESTEEM**

70 ways to handle self-worth

1. Have confidence, believe in yourself, and believe in God.
2. Use positive promises in Scriptures to build your faith capacity.
3. Speak against the mountain.
4. Develop competence or know-how.
5. Develop a strong sense of purpose.
6. Develop a strong sense of security.
7. Develop a strong sense of identity, character and uniqueness.
8. Stop condemning yourself.
9. Failure is a recipe for stress.
10. Handling failure reduces stress.
11. Don't fear failure.
12. Don't misunderstand failure.

13. Don't be unprepared for failure.
14. Stop mediocre thinking or thinking ordinary.
15. Mediocre thinkers "think I am unable".
16. Mediocre thinkers: "They think let the other person do it".
17. Mediocre thinkers blame others.
18. Mediocre thinkers repeat the same mistakes.
19. Mediocre thinkers are less than average thinkers.
20. Mediocre thinkers expect never to fail again.
21. Mediocre thinkers expect to continue to be unsuccessful.
22. Mediocre thinkers are afraid because of past mistakes.
23. Mediocre thinker "thinks I am a failure".
24. Mediocre thinker "thinks quitting".
25. Mediocre thinkers are not winners but losers.
26. Winners never quit and quitters never win.
27. Accept the biblical fact that everybody cannot believe in you (Luke 6:26).
28. Think "I can do it" (Phil 4:13).
29. Stop thinking that success is reserved for other people.
30. Don't repeat yesterday's mistakes today.
31. Sacrifice short-term pleasures for long term.
32. Do not borrow beyond your means.
33. Avoid self-criticism or putting yourself down.
34. Think about the consequences of your actions.
35. Add value to your life through consistent studies.
36. Knowledge will not allow you to be ignorant.
37. Concentrate on your strengths not your weaknesses.
38. Think that "You are the most important person in your life".
39. Your life is shaped by your thoughts (Prov. 4:23).
40. Be transformed by the word of God (Prov. 23:7).
41. Begin to use your ability or talent to solve problems.
42. Accepting your self-worth makes you an achiever.
43. Achievers take responsibility for their actions & inactions.
44. Achievers learn from their mistakes.
45. Achievers are not controlled by their past.
46. Achievers accept failure as part of the progress.
47. Achievers maintain positive attitude in both good and bad times.
48. Achievers take new risks.
49. Achievers aim at taking new territories.
50. The high esteem think failure is not final.
51. Achievers think failure is not avoidable.
52. Achievers think failure is not an event.

53. Achievers think failure is not an enemy.
54. Achievers think failure is not irresistible.
55. Achievers think failure is not stigma.
56. Achievers see failure as temporary
57. Achievers think failure does not make them a failure. It manages stress.
58. Achievers bounce back and reduces stress.
59. Fear of failure retards progress and enhances stress.
60. Achievers shake off fear which reduces stress.
61. Achievers know fear enhances procrastination.
62. Achievers know fear enhances purposelessness
63. Achievers know fear is the substance for self-pity.
64. Achievers know fear is the bedrock of failure.
65. Achievers know fear is the mother of hopelessness.
66. Achievers never give up.
67. Achievers never quit.
68. Positive thinking
69. Positive Faith
70. Seek a mentor (A Pastor to pastor you).

## **TECHNIQUES OF STRESS CONTROL**

Techniques of stress control are several ways of controlling stress including:

1. Time management
2. Listening to relaxation music
3. Conflict resolution
4. Exercise
5. Getting a hobby
6. Meditation
7. Deep breathing
8. Relaxation techniques (visit the beach/park/zoo)

## **STRESS MANAGEMENT IN MINISTRY**

### **Nature of Stress Management**

- It is the simple realization that you are in control of your life.
- Managing stress is all about being in control of your schedules or programs, your situation, your environment, your thoughts, your emotions, and the way you handle problems and challenges.
- Challenges include when the bills keep coming; or when the hours required are not enough to cope with your career, work or family responsibilities, and for all your errands.

- The ultimate goal is leading a balanced life. Which means having time for work, relationships, relaxation, and the ability to keep pressure in check and meet challenges head on.

### **THE DEVIL MASTERMINDS ANGER**

#### Anger Management in Ministry

- Anger is an emotional aversion coupled with intense hostility, enmity, extreme dislike deriving from fear, hate and a sense of injury.

### **CAUSES OF ANGER**

1. Bitterness
2. Fear
3. Hatred
4. Unnecessary arguments
5. Divorce and insecurity
6. Single parenting
7. Unforgiveness
8. Guilty conscience
9. Injustice (Gen. 27.41)
10. Discrimination (Gen. 37.4)
11. Jealousy (Gen. 37.5)
12. Contending over positions (Gen. 37.8)
13. Strife (Prov. 10.12)

### **NEGATIVE SIDE OF ANGER**

1. Tamar's hatred by Amnon (2 Sam. 13.22)
2. Hate without cause (2 Chron. 18.7)
3. Punished for hating the righteousness (Ps. 43.21)
4. Devising hurt against the righteous (Ps. 41.7)
5. Hating the righteous for the sake of the kingdom (Mt. 10.22)
6. Hated for the sake of Christ (Lk. 6.22)

### **POSITIVE SIDE OF ANGER**

1. Abhor robbery
2. Detest all forms of violence (2 Sam. 2.22-30)
3. Detest evil (Job 1.1)
4. Detesting covetousness (Ex. 18.21)
5. Hating false way (Ps. 119.104)
6. Hatred as a cost for discipleship (Lk. 14.26)
7. Hating the doctrine of the Nicolaitans (Rev. 2.6, 15)



### **ELIMINATING ANGER (LIVING WITH YOUR ENEMIES)**

1. Bless and don't persecute (Rom. 12.14)
2. Avoid revenge where possible (Rom. 12.17, 19)
3. Live peaceably with all men (Rom. 12.18)
4. Overcome hatred with good (Rom. 12.21)
5. Pray for them (Mt. 5.43-48)
6. Do good to them (Mt. 5.44)
7. Be kind to them (Lk. 6.35-36)
8. Be merciful to them (Lk. 6.35-36)
9. Cover hatred with love (Prov. 10.12)

### **BIBLICAL BASIS FOR ANGER CONTROL**

1. It is important for people to understand that anger is part of our emotions given by God.
2. It instigates us to act when we encounter certain unexpected challenges.
3. Some have their anger fueled by self-interest and pride.
4. They have certain ego to protect which makes it difficult for them to submit.
5. The challenge to confront it is that when one's emotion is boiling with anger, it is the responsibility of that very individual under attack to use self-control to tone down the degree of anger.
6. Anger stirs up conflict, hurt others and destroys relationships. Certain measures have to be taken to avoid anger

### **TRYING KEEP ANGER UNDER CONTROL**

1. What are the dangers of uncontrolled anger? (Gen. 4:3-8)
2. God knew Cain had what it takes to control his anger. What specific activity did God request Cain to do? (Gen. 4:7)
3. Keep it private when there is disagreement with the other party.
4. Try to resolve issues quietly and don't rush to friends, church members and family to prove your innocence.
5. Keep it from curious ears and eyes. There are some who don't like you but yet, they pretend.

### **TALK TO THE LORD IN PRAYER**

1. Pray a simple child-like prayer to tell God about your negative feelings.
2. If you choose to pray alone and loudly, use words that are full of love, humility, and grace. Keep your ego down.
3. Examine your own motives and actions and stop being self-righteous (Matt. 7:1-3).

**TAKE TIME TO LISTEN**

1. It is appropriate to allow the other party to talk first.
2. Sometimes, the situation will tell who to talk first.
3. As the other party expresses his anger and outburst, do not retort.
4. Even when the occasion demands, do not interrupt to try to defend your actions.
5. Value the other party's sense of judgment, acrimony and pain.
6. Try to empathize – put yourself in the person's situation.

**TAKE TIME TO TALK**

1. After taking the trouble to listen, take time to talk.
2. Talk to the other party with dignity and honor.
3. Do not blow out in anger.
4. Take the advice of James – be slow to talk (James 1:19-20).
5. Attack the problem not each other.
6. When you are talking over matters together and tempers begin to flare, withdraw to take some few minutes outside to break the flow.

**FINDING REMEDY – GODLY APPROACH**

1. Tell each other what you think is the problem.
2. Do everything possible to avoid the blame game.
3. Do not attack personality.
4. Do not prove who is at fault.
5. Do not shift responsibility and don't blame anybody for your anger.
6. Invite possible solutions from each other.

**FINDING REMEDY – SELF HELP**

1. Know that finding remedy requires a radical change of attitude.
2. Ask yourself, "What can I do to make this solution work?"
3. Both of you have to focus on changing behavior.
4. Don't say, "When the other party change then I will also change".
5. Forgive each other from your heart.
6. Forgiveness is a choice. You forgive because you have been forgiven.
7. The limit Jesus gave is seventy times seven (Matt. 18:21-22).

**STEPS TO AVOID ANGER**

1. Approach God in total honesty – accepting your weakness is a major step to expose the enemy.
2. When you are angry, God knows it and don't deceive yourself by thinking you can hide it from God.

3. Tell God what you feel – example: “I feel angry”.
4. Ask yourself the reason why you are angry.
5. Note down the causes of anger and try to avoid them next time even if it affects your ego.
6. Take the issue up to the LORD in prayer and allow passages of peace in the Scriptures to saturate your soul (Phil. 4:6-8).
7. Allow Jesus Christ to be the Lord of the prevailing situation (Col. 4:6).
8. Tell Jesus to give you a humble attitude.
9. Tell Jesus to fill you with the Holy Spirit.
10. The presence of the Holy Spirit will start bearing the fruit of the Spirit which signifies maturity and growth: love, joy, peace, patience, goodness, kindness, faithfulness, meekness and self-control (Gal. 5:22-25).
11. The presence of the fruit of the Spirit will make Jesus take the first place in your life.
12. Do not allow conflicts, suspicion, misunderstanding and disagreements pile up. Deal with them on daily basis as they come.

## **THE DEVIL MASTERMINDS ENEMY AND FEAR**

### **Handling Enemies in Ministry**

#### The Works of Enemies

1. The devil and his demons are our arch enemies in ministry (1 Pet.5:8).
2. Enemies fight against progress (Exodus 15:9).
3. Enemies destroy what is good (Exodus 15:9).
4. Friend or brother can become an enemy (Num. 24:18; 1 Sam. 19:17).
5. Enemies inflict suffering (Deut. 28:53).
6. Enemies can defeat you if you sin against God (1 Kings 8:33).
7. Enemy can remain an enemy forever (1 Sam. 18:29).
8. Enemies can oppress (Psalm 42:9).
9. Enemies can plunder (Psalm 44:10).
10. You can retreat before the enemy (Psalm 44:10).
11. Enemies can revile in their anger (Psalm 55:3).
12. Enemies can bring destruction to the sanctuary (Psalm 74:3).

### **HANDLING YOUR ENEMY**

1. Don't resist your enemy (Matt. 5:39).
2. Turn the other when the enemy slaps the right cheek (Matt. 5:39).
3. Go with your enemy the second mile (Matt. 5:41).
4. Love your enemy (Matt. 5:43-44).
5. Bless those who curse you (Matt. 5:44).

6. Do good to those who hate you (Matt. 5:44).
7. Pray for those who persecute you (Matt. 5:44).
8. Remember God makes His sun shine on all sends rains to the just and the unjust (Matt. 5:45).
9. You have no reward if you love those who love and hate those who hate you (Matt. 5:46).
10. Repay no one evil for evil (Rom. 12:17).
11. If possible, live peaceably with all men (Rom. 12:18).
12. Do not take revenge (Rom. 12:19).
13. But rather, give place to wrath (Rom. 12:19).
14. Vengeance belongs to the LORD, and He will repay (Rom. 12:19).
15. If your enemy is hungry, feed him; if he is thirsty, give him drink; for in so doing you will heap coals of burning fire on his head (Rom. 12:20).
16. Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good (Rom. 12:21).
17. If you love your enemies, and do good to those who hate you, you may be sons of your Father in Heaven; and be perfect as your Father is perfect (Matt. 5:45, 48).
18. You are my friends if you do whatever I command you (John 15:14).

### **OVERCOMING THE ENEMY**

1. God can deliver our enemy into our hands (Judg. 3:28)
2. God is an enemy to the sinner (1 Sam 28:16)
3. Enemies can be conquered (Num. 24:18).
4. We can destroy our enemies (Deut. 33:27).
5. Endless ruin overtakes the enemy (Psalm 9:6).
6. God rescues us from our powerful enemies (Psalm 18:17).
7. The enemy does not triumph over you (Psalm 41:11).
8. God can give you aid over the enemy (Psalm 60:11).
9. God protects from the threat of the enemy (Psalm 64:1).
10. No enemy can subject you to tribute (Psalm 89:22)

### **THE DEVIL MASTERMINDS FEAR**

#### Causes of fear

1. Anxiety
2. Insecurity
3. Lack of courage
4. Fear of the unknown
5. Some mistakes are caused by fear (Gen. 26.7)
6. Covering up of sin is caused by fear (Ex. 2.14)
7. Anticipation of danger causes fear (Ex. 14.13)
8. Feelings of mediocrity and self-pity

9. Inferiority complex and overrating your enemy
10. Poor self-image and self-condemnation
11. Ignorance of who you are or what God has made you
12. Lack of self-acceptance and self-confidence

### **THE HAVOC FEAR CAUSES**

1. It prevents people from trusting fully in the Lord
2. It hinders the use of talents and spiritual gifts
3. It hinders investment
4. It blinds vision
5. It buries dreams (1 Sam. 3.15)
6. It induces mistakes
7. It enhances poor self-image
8. It makes you small in your own eyes
9. It causes sickness and death
10. It causes poverty and takes you away from your blessings
11. It retards the growth of ministry
12. It makes you think unable
13. It can send people to hell
14. It puts you under the control and domain of the devil
15. It makes you a negative thinker
16. It makes you hide from people who can help you

### **20 WAYS TO ELIMINATE FEAR**

1. Scripture records 365 “fear not” – one “fear not” is sufficient for each day (Gen. 50.19).
2. Develop taking a step of faith regardless of the situation (Ex. 14.16).
3. Learn to meditate on the word of God daily (Josh. 1.6-9).
4. Learn to act on the word of God daily (Mt. 14.28-29).
5. Develop practicing positive confessions (1 Sam. 17.45-47).
6. Develop self-confidence and learn to take risk (1 Chron. 11.16-19).
7. Walk with lion killers if you want to be a lion killer (1 Chron. 11.22).
8. Walk with giant killers if you want to be a giant killer (1 Chron. 11.23).
9. Let your heart rise beyond your mind.
10. Think positive (Phil. 4:13).

NB: Note that lions capture victims one at a time while giants capture territories.

11. God did not give us the spirit of fear. And accept the truth that there is no fear in God.
12. Change your lifestyle and walk with the fearless.

13. Develop a consistent prayer life and fast quite often.
14. Accept the truth that you are a new creation and the Spirit of God dwells in you.
15. Don't allow the same old friends dictate to you anymore. Be your own and take over the driving seat.
16. Don't accept the negative things people say about you anymore.
17. Sit down, plan and put your plans into pray. Determine follow what God tells you. Be sensitive to the Spirit of God.
18. Tell God about your fears and weaknesses. Don't pretend for He knows everything about you.
19. Read more books on faith and begin to do what you could not do before. The Spirit will be your helper if you begin to accept yourself.
20. Peter was a fearful person but he never remained the say after his three year encounter with the Lord Jesus.

## **Angelology – doctrine of angels**

### **INTRODUCTION**

- What we believe about angels must be determined by what Scripture teaches, not what people say or think.
- Teachings about angels are found in the Old Testament, the teachings of Jesus Christ, the epistles of Paul and the book of Revelation.

### **THE ORIGIN OF ANGELS**

Angels are eternal created beings brought into existence through the Word of Christ.

Col. 1:16

Psalm 148:2-5

### **WHEN WERE ANGELS CREATED?**

- Angels were created at some point in time before the creation of the universe (Job 38:4-7).
- But they became fallen before the book of Genesis 3.
- They sinned before that of man in Eden.
- The first fall was the fall of angels (Rev. 12:7-9).
- The number of angels is innumerable (Heb. 12:22; Rev. 5:11).

### **THE NATURE OF ANGELS**

- Angel basically means messenger.
- Angels were created spirit beings different from man.
  - Heb. 1:7, 14; Heb. 2:5-7

## PURPOSE OF CREATING ANGELS

- Angels were created to worship and serve God in a condition of untested holiness, but with a will and ability to choose.
  - Heb. 1:6
  - Jude 6-9

Angels have great power

Rev. 7:1

2Pet. 2:10-11

Psalm 103:20

Angels as created beings are limited. They are not omnipresent.

Matt. 24:36

1Pet. 1:10-12

Angels don't marry or reproduce and are of the masculine gender.

Matt. 22:30

Angels do not die

Luke 20:36

Angels are sometimes called sons of God (bene Elohim) in the Scripture.

Job 1:6

Angels often assume the form of a man although they don't have a regular body or flesh and blood.

Heb. 13:2

Eph. 6:12

Angels were of a higher created order than man, but glorified man will ultimately judge evil angels.

1Cor. 6:3

Heb. 2:5-9

Angels exhibit all the traits of personality:

Mind 1Pet. 1:12

Will 2Tim. 2:26

Emotions James 2:19

Angels, good and evil are subject to God

Good Luke 1:26

Evil rev. 9:1-5

### **THE CLASSIFICATION OF ANGELS**

- There is order, class, rank and functional organization within the company of angels, although it is difficult to completely understand how all this works.
- For example, Christ created all things on earth including thrones, powers, dominions, rulers and authorities (Col. 1:16).
- Psalms 89:5-7 speaks of the council or assembly of God's holy ones.
- In the book of Ephesians, both elect and evil angels seems to have some kind of organizational structure.
- Good angels: Eph. 3:10 (rulers and authorities in the heavenly realms).
- Evil angels: Eph. 6:12 (rulers, authorities of this dark world; spiritual forces of evil in heavenly realms).
- Satan is said to be ruler of the kingdom of the air (Eph. 2:2).

### **RANK AND ORDER OF ANGELS**

- The Archangel Michael – he is the only one so designed in Scripture and seems to be Israel's guardian angel (Dan. 10:13).
  - Dan. 12:1
  - Jude 9
  - 1Thess. 4:16
  - Rev. 12:7
- Chief princes – high ranking angels involved in spiritual warfare and the political powers of nations (Dan. 10:13).
- Cherubim – a special order of angels having to do with the guarding of the tabernacle. Satan was of this order before his fall.
  - Gen. 3:22-24
  - Exodus 37:1-9
  - Ezekiel 1:4-14
  - Ezekiel 10:15-20
  - Rev. 4:6-9
- 1. Seraphim – a special order of angels having to do with worship and holiness around God's throne (Isaiah 6:1-6)
- 2. Governing angels – whether good or evil. Scripture seems to talk about angels who are involved in the political affairs of nations working through their leaders or who part of the ruling classes of angels in heavenly realms.
- 3. Rulers and principalities (Eph. 3:10; Col. 1:16)
- 4. Authorities (Eph. 3:10; Col. 1:16)
- 5. Powers (Rom. 8:38-39; 1Pet. 3:22)



6. Spiritual forces (Eph. 6:12)
7. Thrones (Col. 1:16)
8. Dominions (Eph. 1:21)

### **SPECIAL ANGELS**

Gabriel is the only special angel in Scripture whose name is given. He is God's special messenger who delivered God's message to:

Daniel Dan. 8:16; 9:21

Zechariah Luke 1:19

Mary Luke 1:26

### **THE TWO CLASSES OF ANGELS**

There seem to be two classes of angels in Scripture – the elect and the fallen (much like men: the saved and the unsaved).

#### **Elect**

- Elect angels are holy angels who choose to worship and serve God forever.
- 1Tim. 5:21
- Luke 9:26

#### **Fallen**

- The fallen angels are veil angels who chose to follow Satan in his rebellion against God. these fallen angels are known as demons.
- Matt. 12:24

One third of the angels are fallen and two thirds are elect.

- Luke 10:17-18
- Matt. 25:41
- 2Pet. 2:4
- Jude 6
- Rev. 12:3-4

Once the choice was made, it seems to be fixed since Christ did not die to save angels. Satan and his demonic hosts are all classified as fallen (evil angels).

In this course, fallen angels are referred to as demons with Satan as their head (Matt. 25:41);

While elect angels will be hereafter referred to as angels (Rev. 12:7).

### **THE MINISTRY OF ANGELS**

Generally, angels were created to be servants who act as messengers and who minister to God and to His people.

## **Ministry for God**

Angels perform a variety of ministries for God

1. Worship Heb. 1:6
2. Service Rev. 22:9
3. Praise Psalm 148:2
4. Carry out God's commands Psalm 103:20-22
5. Deliver messages Luke 1:11-13
6. Execute God's judgments Rev. 8:7; Acts 12:22-23
7. Communicate revelation Heb. 2:2; Gal. 3:19; Dan 9:20-27
8. Intervene in men's lives Num. 22:21-28; Gen. 19:5

## **MINISTRY TO CHRIST**

1. During His earthly life, angels played significant role in the ministry of Christ
2. Announced His birth (Luke 1:26-33).
3. Praised Him (Luke 2:8-15)
4. Attended Him after His temptation (Matt. 4:11)
5. Strengthened Him in the Garden of Gethsemane (Luke 22:43)
6. Guarding and protecting Him Psalm (91:11-12)
7. Rolled away the stone from His tomb (Matt. 28:2)
8. Proclaimed His resurrection (Matt. 28:5-7)
9. Witnessed His ascension (Acts 1:10-11)

## **MINISTRY IN THE SECOND COMING**

- They will signal the rapture (1Thess. 4:16).
- They will return with Christ at the second coming (Matt. 25:31).
- They will separate believers from the unbelievers (Matt. 13:37-41).

## **MINISTRY TO THE CHURCH IN ACTS**

- Freed Peter from prison (Acts 5:19).
- Provided direction (Acts 8:26)
- Gave instructions (Acts 10:22).
- Confirmed God's will (Acts 27:23).

## **MINISTRY TO THE NATIONS**

Michael guards Israel (Dan. 12:1).

Angels influence world leaders (Dan. 10:20-21).

## **MINISTRY TO BELIEVERS**

1. Strengthening them (1Kings 19:5-8).
2. Protecting them (2Kings 6:11-18; Psalm 34:7; Matt. 18:10).

3. Helping and ministering to them (Heb. 1:14).
4. Delivering answers to prayers (Acts 12:5-11).
5. Rejoicing over their salvation (Luke 15:10).
6. Watching the work of men (1Cor. 4:9).
7. Escorting dead believers to heaven (Luke 16:22).

### **FALLEN ANGELS**

- One third of the angels are fallen, evil angels who are called demons with Satan as their leader. Sometime before Genesis 3, Satan led a rebellion in heaven against God in an attempt to challenge the power and authority of God and to replace Him.

### **THE 5 “I WILLS” OF SATAN**

1. Isaiah 14 describes the 5 “I wills” of Satan. It depicts the pride which led to the revolt his casting out from heaven (Isaiah 14:12-15).
2. 1Tim. 3:6 states that pride was at the root of Satan’s sin. Satan wanted to be his own God! Satan said, “I will take God’s throne from Him.”
3. God judged Satan and the evil angels which followed him by casting them out of heaven, and the lake of fire will be their final dwelling place (Matt. 25:41).
4. Permanently from that point on, Satan and all his demons were evil, and their fate sealed. Although Christ judged and destroyed the works of Satan on the cross, the execution and judgment against Satan had been postponed until the final judgment day.
5. In the meantime, Satan is free under God’s sovereign power to continue to carry out his evil schemes which really are working for God’s ultimate purpose.
  - Luke 10:17-18
  - Rev. 12:4
  - Isaiah 14:12-15
  - John 16:11
  - 1John 3:8
  - Rev. 20:1-3, 7-10

### **SATAN’S REALITY**

- The head of the demonic hosts is Satan. Many people regard Satan as an impersonal evil force, but the Scripture teaches about the reality of Satan’s existence as a fallen evil angel.
- Every section of the Old Testament and the New Testament teaches about the existence of Satan in (Genesis, 1Chronicles, Job, Isaiah, Ezekiel and Zachariah. And on 25 separate occasions in the Gospels, Jesus spoke about Satan.

### **SATAN'S NAMES**

- Accuser or adversary (Zech. 3:1; Matt. 4:10).
- The devil or slanderer (Heb. 2:14; Matt. 4:8).
- Lucifer or morning star, son of the dawn, shinning one (Isaiah 14:12).
- Belial or wickedness (2Cor. 6:15).
- Beelzebul or lord of the flies (Matt. 12:24).

### **SATAN'S TITLES**

- These titles ascribed by Scripture to Satan describes his nature and work:
- Prince of demons (Matt. 12:24).
- God of this age (2Cor. 4:4).
- Ruler of the kingdom of the air (Eph. 2:2).
- Prince or ruler of this world (John 12:31).
- The evil one (1John 5:19).
- Dragon or serpent (Rev. 12:7, 9).
- The tempter (1Thess. 3:5).
- Accuser of the brethren (Rev. 12:10).
- The enemy (Matt. 12:39).
- A roaring lion (1Pet. 5:8).
- Angel of light (2Cor. 11:14).

### **SATAN'S NATURE**

- Satan was originally created as an angel of the highest order according to the Scripture. His nature before the fall was described in **Ezek. 28:12-17** as follows:
- Model of perfection
- Full of wisdom
- Perfect in beauty
- Anointed as guardian cherub
- Blameless in all his ways
- Until iniquity or wickedness or sin was found in him.

NB: Just as with men, God created angels with a will to choose to worship Him or not. By choosing to rebel against God, Satan activated the potential for evil within himself.

### **SATAN'S PERSONALITY**

- Satan is not an impersonal force, but a created angelic being with personality.
- He has mind – cunning and devices schemes (2Cor. 11:3; Eph. 6:11).
- He has will (Isaiah 14:12-15).
- He has emotions – can be enraged (Rev. 12:17).

- Both the Old Testament and the New Testament refer to Satan as a person “your hands” (Job 1:12).”me and I” (Luke 4:6).

### **SATAN’S CHARACTER**

- Satan is described in Scripture as:
  - A murderer John 8:44
  - A liar John 8:44
  - A deceiver Rev. 20:7-8
  - Our adversary 1Pet. 5:8
  - The father of unbelievers John 8:44

### **SATAN’S REALM OF OPERATIONS**

- Satan operates in heavenly realms and on earth to perpetuate the world or the cosmos – that counterfeit world system run by Satan which opposed to the things of God and promotes living independently of God.
  - 1John 2:13-17
  - 1John 5:19
- But Satan still operates under the sovereignty of God and only with His permission for Satan is already a defeated foe
  - Job 1:12
  - John 12:31
  - John 16:11

### **SATAN’S STRATEGY**

#### **With regard to God**

1. Challenges truth of God’s Word (Gen. 3:3).
2. Calls God a liar (Gen. 3:4).
3. Questions God’s goodness (Gen. 3:5).
4. Encourages rebellion against God (Gen. 3:6)
5. Leads people to live independently (Gen. 3:6).
6. Seeks to discredit God (Job 1:8-11).
7. Incites God’s leaders to sin (1Chron. 21:1-2).
8. Empowers evil rulers (Isaiah 14:3-6; Ezek. 28:1-5, 11-12).
9. Blasphemes God (Rev. 13:5-6).
10. Promotes false doctrine (Rev. 2:24; 1Tim. 4:1).
11. Actively encourages sin (2Thess. 2:9-10).
12. Opposes God’s work in the world (Matt. 16:21-22; Luke 22:1-6).
13. Persecutes God’s people (Rev. 12:17).
14. Sets up counterfeit kingdom in the tribulation opposed to God, a one world government, economy and religion (Rev. 13:1-18).

15. Establishes an unholy trinity in the tribulation: Satan, Antichrist and False prophet (Rev. 13:1-19).
16. Requires people to worship him (Rev. 13:1-18).
17. Deceives the nations and leads them in revolt against God and His people (Rev. 20:7-10).

#### **WITH REGARDS TO CHRIST**

1. Incited Herod to kill Christ at birth (Matt. 2:12-16; Rev. 12:1-5).
2. Tempted Christ in the wilderness:

  3. To meet His own needs.
  4. To bring glory to Himself.
  5. To receive what was rightly His, but in Satan's way.
  6. To worship Satan.

7. Luke 4:1-13
8. Engineered Israel's rejection of Christ (Matt. 12:22-32).
9. Confused Jesus' disciples (Matt. 16:21-23).
10. Tempted Christ in the Garden to avoid the cross and not to do God's will (Luke 22:39-46).

#### **WITH REGARD TO UNBELIEVERS**

1. He is their father (John 8:44).
2. Blinds their minds to the truth (1Cor. 4:3-4).
3. Influences them to lie (Acts 5:3).
4. Snatches the Gospel away (Matt. 4:13-15).
5. Leads them to sin and disobey (Eph. 2:1-3).
6. Is their ruler (Col. 1:13).
7. Holds them captive to his will (2Tim. 2:25-26).
8. Enslaves them to sin (Rom. 6:12-13).

#### **WITH REGARDS TO BELIEVERS**

1. Masquerades as angel of light (2Cor. 11:14).
2. Is their enemy or adversary (1Pet. 5:8).
3. Hinders their prayers (Dan. 10:12-13).
4. Plants false Christians in the church to create confusion and strife (Matt. 13:36-47).
5. Encouraging immorality (1Cor. 7:1-7).
6. Accuses of sin (Rev. 12:10; Zech. 3:1-5; 1Thess. 2:18; 1John 2:1).
7. Thwarts ministry (1Thess. 2:18).
8. Promotes spiritual warfare against believers (Eph. 6:10-18).
9. Tries to snare believers in pride (1Tim. 3:7).

10. Tests their faith (Luke 22:31-32).
11. Tempts them to unforgiveness (2Cor. 2:9-11).
12. Sometimes afflicts them with diseases and infirmities (2Cor. 12:7).
13. Seeks to destroy their testimony and usefulness to God (1Pet. 5:8).
14. Tempts them to sin (James 1:13-15; 1Thess. 3:5).

### **HOW GOD USES SATAN**

1. Even though Satan appears to be in control of this world, God uses Satan to accomplish His purpose:
2. To confirm the sinfulness of man (Rev. 9:20-21; Rev. 20:7-10).
3. To carry out God's judgment against sin (Rev. 9:1-11).
4. To test the faith of believers (Job 1:8-12; Eph. 6:16; Luke 22:31-32).
5. To keep believers humble (2Cor. 12:7-10).

### **HOW BELIEVERS RESIST SATAN**

1. While Satan is not God and therefore is not omnipotent, omniscient and omnipresent, he is very powerful, formidable enemy.
2. Satan can easily defeat the believer who stands against him in his own strength. But the promise of Scripture is that the believer can withstand and defeat Satan by following the principles of Scripture and the example of Christ.
3. The believer never underestimate Satan (Jude 8-10).
4. Submit to God (James 4:7).
5. Resist Satan (James 4:7).
6. Stand firm in faith against Satan's schemes and temptations (Eph. 6:13-16; 1Pet. 5:8).
7. Rely on the power of the Holy Spirit (Eph. 6:18; 1John 4:4).
8. Rest in the prayers of Jesus (John 17:15).
9. Rebuke Satan in the name of Christ (Matt. 16:23; Jude 9; Zach. 3:2).
10. Apply the truth of God's Word to the strategies of Satan (Matt. 4:4; Eph. 6:17).

### **DEMONS**

#### Their reality

- The reality of demons, just like the reality of Satan, rests in the truth of Scripture. It is helpful to remember that demons are fallen angels who follow and serve Satan.
- The witness of Scripture as to demons is consistent:

#### In the Old Testament:

- Deut. 32:17
- 1Sam. 16:14-15)

In the New Testament

1Cor. 10:20-21

Rom. 8:38

By Christ in the Gospels

Mark 5:1-16

In the end times

- Rev. 9:20

Their nature and work

- Demons are evil, unclean spirits who carry out commands of Satan their ruler. They are fallen angels of lower rank than Satan.
  - Matt. 12:24
  - Matt. 5:12-13
  - Demons are powerful (Acts 19:13-16).
  - Demons are intelligent (Luke 8:26-32).
  - Demons are emotional beings (James 2:19).
  - Demons have names (Luke 8:30-31).
  - But are also subject to God (Luke 9:42-43).
- Some demons are free and active (Eph. 6:11-112).
- Some demons engage in spiritual warfare (1Tim. 4:1).
- Other demons are also confined permanently in the abyss (2Pet. 2:4 Jude 6; 1Pet. 1:13-20).
- Because of some gross sin, perhaps in Gen. 6:1-6, these demons are locked up by God.
- Temporally in the Abyss to be loosed as instruments of judgment against sin in the tribulation (Rev. 9:1-15).

## **METHODS OF DEMONIC OPERATIONS**

Demons operate mainly through these three major areas:

1. Demonic obsession
2. Demonic oppression
3. Demonic possession

NB: The above are the easy steps leading into demonic possession.

## **DEMONIC OBSESSION**

1. The state of being obsessed with someone or something. For example: caring for someone with a deep devotion bordering on obsession.



2. Obsession could also be an idea or thought that continually preoccupies or intrudes on a person's mind. An obsessed person is someone who is in the grip of an obsession he was powerless to resist.
3. A person under the strong influence of obsession especially in the area of lust can lead to fornication, adultery, masturbation, lesbianism, worldly or rock music, or being addicted to pornography.
4. Obsession normally works strongly in the realms of the soul or emotions. It manipulates one's mind and influences his will, choices to make wrong decisions.
5. Another example is in the area of taste. People can be obsessed in the area of drugs for example through alcohol, smoking cannabis, marijuana, hard liquor among others.
6. Another area people are obsessed and cannot control themselves is in the area of wealth acquisition and getting money through foul means.
7. Some national leaders or statemen, secular leaders, and some pastors can also be obsessed with the will to hold on to power. This normally leads them to occultic practices and they eventually sell their souls to the devil in the name of power.
8. Obsession when not controlled by the Holy Scriptures and prayer can lead to the second step which is demonic oppression. If yours have reached an unprecedented level, you are advised to seek help from a genuine man of God.
  - 1John 2:15-17
  - 1Cor. 9:6

### **DEMONIC OPPRESSION**

1. Oppression can be defined as a prolonged cruel or unjust treatment or control. A country, region individuals can be shattered by oppression, killing and diseases.
2. It could also be the state of being subject to unjust treatment or control by the devil. It is also subjecting the mind under mental pressure or distress demons, prolonged poverty, chronic sickness, broken relationships leading to broken hearts among others.
3. Oppression can change the mood of the oppressed and is one of the major ways which lead people to commit suicide.
4. Demons can keep the oppressed in subservience (willingness to obey your masters unquestionably) in prolonged hardship.
5. Oppression can cause someone to feel distressed, anxious or discomfort. Some spouses are oppressed by secret worry due to debt, hardship, secret sin or covenant with the devil. Oppression is another way demons use to gain control of people.
  - Isaiah 61:1
  - Luke 4:18

## DEMONIC POSSESSION

1. Demonic possession is the highest form of demonic activity. It is clear in the Scriptures that demons can possess both men and animals (Luke 8:26-38).
2. Possession means the demon residing in the possessed takes direct control, influence and authority over that person.
3. That demons can possess unbelievers seems quite clear. Such possession produces a number of symptoms.
4. Some of the characteristics of a person who is possessed are illustrated in Mark 5:1-20.
  - Indwelling by an evil or unclean spirit
  - Superhuman strength
  - Change of personality
  - Mental derangement
  - Superhuman perception
  - Uncontrollable emotions
  - Opposition to the things of God
5. Demons can also cause mental disease and physical illness (Matt. 9:32; Luke 8:34-36).

NB:

- And while demons can possess (indwell) an unbeliever, Scripture teaches that since a believer is indwelt by the Holy Spirit, he can only be influenced or dominated by demon but not possessed.
  - 1Cor. 6:19; 2Cor. 6:14-17
  - Matt. 16:21-23
  - 1Chron. 21:1-2

### Dealing with demons

Only the power of God can deal with demons (Mark 9:14-29).

## DESTINY OF ANGELS

Destiny of demons

- Judgment has already been rendered by God against fallen angels. They will end up with Satan and all unbelievers in the lake of fire (Matt. 25:41; Rev. 20:10-13).

Destiny of Angels

- God's elect angels will live, serve and worship Him forever (Rev. 5:11-14).

# ECCLESIOLOGY

## THE DOCTRINE OF THE CHURCH

A Concise Road Map for the Church  
Bishop Nii Nai Mensah

### First Word:

- The Ageless Church is the church beyond the ages. It existed before time began.
- This church had her name written in the Lamb's book of life and existed on the day the Lamb of God was slain before the foundation of the earth (Rev. 13:8).
- Members of this church called the elect and existed before time (Eph. 1:4; 1Pet. 1:3, 19-20).
- The Ageless Church existed before time; within time; and beyond time (Rom. 8:29).
- The church before the age: Does the church exist before time? Church Spiritual!
- The church within the age: Does the church exist within time? Church Militant!
- The church beyond the age: Does the church exist beyond time? Church Triumphant!

### CHURCH SPIRITUAL

- Worship originated with God. There is no worship without God. Wherever God is present and worshipped, the church is present. The angels of heaven worshipped God long before the universe was created.
- It signifies the existence of the Church Spiritual long before creation and time. The Lamb was first slain in heaven before its final fulfilment on earth (Revelation 13:8). The blood of the Lamb conquered the devil in heaven before its fulfilment on earth (Revelation 12:11).
- The reader must bear in mind that the book of Revelation is a record of past, present and future events [Revelation 1:19]. And it is about the God of the beginning and the end (Revelation 1:8, 11).

### CHURCH MILITANT

- Christ is the founder and builder of this church (Matthew 16:16-19). It comprises the current universal body of Christ redeemed by the blood of the Lamb. They have their names written in the Book of Life (Revelation 7:9-17; 13:8).
- The church existed before it was legally instituted and inaugurated by Christ through the blood of the New Covenant. It originated from heaven and will go back to heaven at the close of the age.

### **CHURCH TRIUMPHANT**

- This is the combination of the Church Spiritual and the Church Militant. It is the future glorious church in heaven present at the marriage supper of the Lamb. It is the Bride of Christ (Revelation 19:6-10).
- Members of the Triumphant Church have their names written in the Book of Life [Revelation 20:12]. This is the redeemed of the Lord, and they shall enter into the glory of the New Jerusalem (Revelation 21:1-8, 22-27).

### **SEVEN MARKS OF THE JEWISH CHURCH AT JERUSALEM**

1. Progressive Church (Acts 2:41; Acts 4:4)
2. Powerful Church (Acts 3:6-9)
3. Persecuted Church (Acts 8:1-2)
4. Purposeful Church (Acts 1:8)
5. Prophetic Church (Acts 11:27-30)
6. Preaching Church (Acts 2:14-15, 36-41)
7. Praying Church (Acts 4:29-31)

### **SEVEN MARKS OF THE GENTILE CHURCH AT ANTIOCH**

1. Gentile Church (Acts 11:20)
2. Gospel Church (Acts 11:20)
3. Growing Church (Acts 11:21, 24)
4. Giving Church (Acts 11:27-30)
5. Gifted Church (Acts 13:1)
6. Guided Church (Acts 13:2)
7. Going Church (Acts 13:3-4)

### **SEVEN MARKS OF THE OLD TESTAMENT CHURCH**

This was a typology of the New Testament church that was to come.

1. Wilderness Church (Exodus 3:18; Exodus 7:16; Exodus 8:27)
2. Walking Church (Exodus 15:22-23)
3. Waiting Church (Gen. 15:12-14)
4. Worshipping Church (Exodus 3:12; Exodus 15:20-21)
5. Weeping Church (Exodus 15:25-26)
6. Winning Church (Exodus 15:27)
7. Watching Church (Exodus 14:24)

### **SEVEN MARKS OF THE GOSPEL CHURCH**

The church is worthy of emulation. The church must first follow Christ before it can be followed by society.

1. Followed Church (Matthew 4:25; 16:24; 1 Corinthians 11:1)

2. Freed Church (John 8:32, 36; Galatians 5:1)
3. Filled Church (Matthew 5:6; Acts 2:4; 4:31)
4. Faithful Church (Matthew 25:19-23; Proverbs 28:20)
5. Fighting Church (Luke 10:19; 2Tim. 4:7; 1Tim. 1:18-19 6:12; 1 Cor. 10:4; Eph. 6:10-18)
6. Fruitful Church (Matthew 7:16, 20; John 15:2, 16; Galatians 5:22-23)
7. Fearless Church (Luke 10:17-19; Proverbs 28:1; 2 Timothy 1:7; 1 John 4:8)

### **SEVEN MARKS OF THE CHURCH IN THE EPISTLES**

1. Living Church – a church which shall never die (1Pet. 1:3; 1Pet. 2:5)
2. Liberated Church – the church freed into the world (1Pet. 1:1-2).
3. Leading Church – Pace setter church or church leading by example (1Thess. 1:7-10).
4. Learning Church – like disciples learning from Christ (1Cor. 11:1; 1Thess. 1:6).
5. Lifted Church – none can be compared to it (Eph. 2:4-6).
6. Laboring Church – involved in ministry with Jesus (1Cor. 15:57).
7. Logos Church – church of the Word (Acts 17:2-4, 6).

### **GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE CHURCH MILITANT OR CHURCH UNIVERSAL**

1. Strong Church (Luke 9:1)
2. Sent Church (Luke 9:2)
3. Sowing Church (Luke 9:2)
4. Simple Church (Luke 9:3)
5. Suffering Church (Luke 9:3)
6. Seeking Church (Luke 9:4)
7. Sufficient Church (2Cor. 3:5; 2Cor. 12:9)
8. Separated Church (Matthew 10:1)
9. Selected Church (Matthew 10:2-4)
10. Supplying Church (Matthew 10:8)
11. Staying Church (Matthew 10:11)
12. Sensitive Church (Matthew 10:16, 23)
13. Speaking Church (Matthew 10:19-20, 32)
14. Suffering Church (Matthew 10:21-22)
15. Saving Church (Matthew 10:22)
16. Serving Church (Matthew 10:24-25)
17. Significant Church (Matthew 10:29-30)
18. Slothful Church (Matthew 10:33)
19. Surviving – Struggling Church (Matthew 10:34-36)
20. Steadfast Church (Matthew 10:37-39)

## 21. Successful Church (Matthew 10:40-43)

### **THE CREATIVE CHURCH**

- It's time for the church to be generational thinkers and get rid of anything old time principles which hamper growth and progress.
- Noah did something no one had ever done before. He built an ark with modern-day specifications and engineering standards.

Text: Genesis 6:11-21

Factors to be considered

- Concerns
- Commission
- Creativity

### **CONCERNS**

Genesis 6:11-12

- Concerns trigger the commission.
- Concerns in society must raise awareness of societal needs in the church.

### **COMMISSION**

Genesis 6:13-14, 22

- The church is commissioned by God.
- The church has a duty to save society.

### **CREATIVITY**

Genesis 6:15-16

- Noah's inbuilt wisdom.
- Noah's ship is a standard for modern ship building – lower, middle and upper decks.
- The church needs to be creative in this modern-day society before it can win it.

### **OTHER CONTRIBUTING FACTORS**

The church can only expand and take over the world if the following factors are embarked upon:

1. Initiative – the church needs to step out in faith.
2. Integrity – the needs to rid itself from all corruptible ways.
3. Industry – the church should be more business minded in winning the world.
4. Insight – the church needs to see before the world sees.

## THE CHURCH DEFINED

- The Greek word for church is Ecclesia used in the New Testament as the assembly of called out people. The church is both called out from the world and called into the world to serve the purposes of God. It is used both in the local sense and universal sense.
  - Matt. 16:15-19

## THE UNIVERSAL CHURCH

1. Various types of churches have been mentioned by the author many times in the doctrine of ecclesiology. The church universal consists of the congregation since Pentecost when the church was vitally manifested or unveiled to the world.
  2. Members of the church are those who have been baptized by the Spirit into the body of Christ worldwide.
  3. Thus, the universal church both as supernatural organism headed by Christ and a human organization controlled or administered by men.
  4. The church is a dynamic living dwelling in which God lives by His Holy Spirit.
    - 1Cor. 12:13
    - Eph. 1:22-23
    - Eph. 2:22
- The universal is represented in various forms in the Scriptures such as:
    - Body of Christ (Eph. 4:12)
    - Bride of Christ (2Cor. 11:2)
    - God's Building (1Cor. 3:9)
    - Royal Priesthood (1Pet. 2:9)
    - People of God (1Pet. 2:9)
    - Spiritual House (1Pet. 2:5)
    - Holy Priesthood (1Pet. 2:5)
  - In terms of organization, Christ is the head (Eph. 1:22); and Chief Cornerstone (1Pet. 2:6-7); believers are members of His Body (1Cor. 12:27); without distinction as to worth, rank or office (1Cor. 12:12-13; Eph. 3:6; Col. 3:11).

## LOCAL CHURCH

- It is in the local church that the universal church finds its expression. The universal church manifests itself in the local church.
- The local church itself is not a building or place but the people who meet and worship in that place, which could be in a house or under a tree (Rom. 16:3-5).
- It is in this context of the local church that the officers and government are considered. Therefore, Christ is the Head and the Holy Spirit is its empowerment.

## **ORIGIN OF THE CHURCH**

The church itself is a mystery. It was founded before the creation of the world. The church as spiritual organism was started by God in the eternity past, before the foundation of the earth.

1. God chose the church according to His foreknowledge (1Pet. 1:2).
2. The Lamb of God was slain before the foundation of the world (Rev. 13:8).
3. Believers have their names written in the Lamb's Book of Life before the foundation of the world (Rev. 13:8).
4. The blood of Christ was poured before the foundation of the world (1Pet. 1:19-20).
5. The elect were chosen before the foundation of the world (Eph. 1:4).
6. God foreknew us, predestined us, called, justified and glorified us before the foundation of the world (Rom. 8:29-30).

The church started on the day God instituted all the above, but it was vitally manifested, unveiled and launched in to the world on the day of Pentecost.

It was legally announced on the day Peter confessed Christ as Son of the Living God.

- Acts 2:1-4
- Matt. 16:16-19

NB: The church like the Trinity, was not mentioned in the Old Testament, but in principle, the application was there.

## **FOUNDATION OF THE CHURCH**

The three Pillars of the Church

### **JESUS CHRIST IS THE FIRST PILLAR**

- Jesus Christ is the Founder and Chief Cornerstone of the Church; for in him the church exists and grows.
- Christ indwells in every believer and in the church corporately. The church is also said to be in Christ.
- Christ is the Rock on which the Church was built.
  - Eph. 2:19-22
  - 1Cor. 3:11
  - Matt. 16:18
  - Matt. 18:18-19

### **THE APOSTLES ARE THE SECOND PILLAR**

Secondly, the second pillar of the church's foundation is the Apostles. The church is built upon the foundation of the apostles; and Peter's confession of Christ as stated in Matthew 16:16-8.

Eph. 2:19-22



## **THE WORD OF GOD IS THE THIRD PILLAR**

The Third pillar of the foundation of the church is The Word of God. the Word of God reveals the nature and ministry of the church and represents the contents of the teaching of the Church.

Col. 1:24-27

Acts 2:42-47

1Thess. 2:13-14

## **PURPOSE OF THE CHURCH**

The New Testament seem to emphasize on principles instead of organizational structure; functions and. Ministry instead of officers, position and titles; and spiritual qualification instead of expertise and prominence.

## **SPECIFICALLY, THE CHURCH HAS THE FOLLOWING PURPOSES**

1. To make disciples and to obey the Great Commission
  - Matt. 28:18-20
  - Luke 24:46-49
2. To bring people to Christ (Evangelism)
  - Acts 1:8
  - Mark 16:15
3. To build people in Christ through discipleship (Equipping)
  - Acts 2:42
  - Ga. 2:9
  - 1John 1:3
4. To minister in the power of the Holy Spirit (Enablement)
  - Col. 1:28-29
  - Eph. 1:18-19
  - Eph. 3:20
5. To gather together for worship (Edification)
  - Acts 6:4
  - Eph. 6:18-20
6. To promote righteousness in the world – to be a life changer
  - 1Pet. 2:11-12
  - Phil. 2:14-16
  - Eph. 2:10
7. To prepare herself as the Bride of Christ
 

Positionally, the Church as the Bride of Christ is already pure (Eph. 5:26-27), but practically, she has much purification to do through discipleship, purging from sin, cleansing from immorality including dissension, greed, pride among others.

  - Acts 5:9-11

- Rom. 16:17
  - Matt. 18:15-20
  - 1Cor. 3:1-0
  - To glorify God
8. The ultimate purpose of the Church is to glory God through worship in this present world and in the ages to come.
- Eph. 1:5-6
  - Eph. 1:12
  - 2Thess. 1:11-12

### **OFFICERS IN THE LOCAL CHURCH**

There are two distinct leaders in the New Testament church: Elders (spiritual leaders) and Deacons (serving leaders – for service and administrative purposes).

### **BISHOP OR OVERSEER**

- Bishop is “episkopos” in Greek.
- Paul in his letter to the Philippians addressed them as saints including overseers (Phil.1:1).
- Paul called the elder in the church at Ephesus “Elders and Bishops or Overseers” (Acts 20:17 and Acts 20:28).
- Paul used elder and bishop interchangeably in his letter to Titus – Elders in Titus 1:5, and Bishop in Titus 1:7.
- In 1Tim. 3:1-7, elder is not mentioned but overseer or bishop is mentioned. It implies that both elder and bishop are the same.

Thus,

Bishop – may refer to nature of ministry

Elder – may refer to title

Pastor – may refer to function

### **PASTOR OR SHEPHERD**

- Pastor is “poimen” in Greek.
- The word translated pastor means shepherd and refers to function. Both elders (1Pet. 5:1) and overseers (Acts 20:28) are told to pastor or shepherd the flock of God.
- Pastors are to equip and train church members for the work of ministry to the saints (Eph. 4:11-12).
- Pastors are to rule and administer the church business (1Thess. 5:17).
- Pastors are to teach and preach (1Tim. 4:13-16).
- Pastors are to oversee spiritual matters (1Tim. 3:1).
- Pastors are to shepherd God’s people (1Pet. 5:1-4).

- Pastors are to combat false teaching (Titus 1:9).
- Pastors are to set good examples for church members and other church leaders.
  - Heb. 13:7
  - 1Cor. 11:1
  - 1Tim. 4:11-12
- Church leaders should be respected, obeyed and paid well but they will render account to God for their ministry.
- To whom much responsibility and privilege is given, much accountability is required.
  - 1Cor. 9:13-14
  - Heb. 13:17
  - 1Tim. 5:19
  - Luke 12:48

### **ORGANIZATION AND GOVERNMENT OF THE CHURCH**

- The New Testament reveals certain organizational structure of the church. Church history further reveals that the local church has had organizational structure and human administration.
- The word government carries the idea of ruling, controlling or exercising authority over the affairs of the church as physical organization and spiritual organism.
- The three basic forms of church government are:
  - Episcopal or Hierarchical Form
  - Presbyterian or Federal Form
  - Congregational Form

### **EPISCOPAL OR HIERARCHICAL FORM**

- This is the church government by bishops. It involves three-fold ministry of bishops (overseers), presbyters (priests) and deacons. The elders and priests are subject to the bishop who alone has the right to ordain ministers.
- The episcopal form is found in differing degrees in Roman Catholic, Episcopal, Lutheran, Anglican, Orthodox, Methodist and some present-day Pentecostal and Charismatic circles.
- The problem with the episcopal form is that it's not found in the New Testament but arose in the second century with the rise of the Pope becoming the ultimate bishop.

### **PRESBYTERIAN OR FEDERAL FORM**

- This form of church government refers to rulership by the elders who are elected as representatives of the members of the church.

- The people indirectly govern through the elders. The board which governs the local church is called Session with a presiding elder as the chairman.
- The Presbyterian form finds its biblical basis in the appointment of elders by the apostles; the conduct of the Jerusalem Council and the ordination passages (Acts 14:23; Titus 1:5; Acts 15:1-35; 1Tim. 4:14; 1Tim. 5:17).
- There were clearly rulers of the churches beside apostles (Heb. 13:7, 17).
- However, it seems clear that the congregation was involved in church government in many cases (Acts 6:1-6; Acts 14:23; Acts 15:6).

### **CONGREGATIONAL FORM**

- The congregational form rests the authority of the church in the members of each local church. While ministers are selected as leaders, their authority rests solely in the relationship to the congregation.
- This pattern of church government is followed by Baptists, Evangelical Free, Disciples and many independent churches.
- The congregational form of church government has a broad base of biblical support in the New Testament including the Jerusalem Council (Acts 15).
- Elected its own officers and delegates and had the power to carry out its own church discipline (Acts 6:1-6; Acts 15:2-3; 1Cor. 5:1-13; 2Cor. 2:5-11; 2Thess. 3:14-15).

### **ORDINANCES AND SACRAMENTS OF THE LOCAL CHURCH**

- Both ordinances and sacraments are terms which are not used directly in Scripture. Sacrament refers to a thing set aside as sacred whilst ordinance refers to a recognized religious practice or rite. It came from the Latin word “ordo” or an order.
- The recognized ordinances of the church are the Lord’s Supper and Baptism.

# **ESCHATOLOGY**

## **THE DOCTRINE OF FUTURE THINGS**

### **NATURE OF ESCHATOLOGY**

Eschatology has to do with future things or the events in the end times. It unfolds God's prophetic program for the Church, Israel, men and the entire created order.

### **THE 2<sup>ND</sup> COMING OF CHRIST AND THE RAPTURE**

1. 7 key reasons why the word of God is dependable
2. Understanding end time key terms
3. 7000 years of human history?
4. Knowledge and travel explosion
5. The three crucial questions
6. 20 signs of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Coming of Christ
7. The sign of the Fig Tree
8. Re-gathering of Israel – 18 facts to know
9. 21 Prophetic signposts of the end time
10. The Rapture of the church
11. Biblical basis of the Rapture
- 12.7 Biblical Raptures
- 13.7 Biblical Resurrections
14. Events in Heaven
15. Events on Earth

### **THE REVELATION OF THE ANTICHRIST**

1. 7year reign of the Antichrist
2. The Mark of the Beast

3. The Great Tribulation
4. Mid-tribulation preaching
5. The Ministry of the Two Witnesses
6. The fall of Babylon the Great
7. The tribulation Saints
8. The battle of Armageddon

### **THE 2<sup>ND</sup> COMING OF CHRIST AND THE END OF THE WORLD**

1. The 2<sup>nd</sup> coming of Christ
2. Biblical basis of the Second Advent
3. The manner of His 2<sup>nd</sup> Coming
4. When will be the time of His 2<sup>nd</sup> Coming be?
5. 7 Purposes of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Coming of Christ
6. 7 biblical bases for the glorified bodies of the Saints
7. 11 Contrasts between the Rapture and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Coming of Christ
8. Satan bound for 1,000 years
9. The Millennial age
10. The battle of Gog and Magog
11. The end of the world
12. The Great White Throne Judgment
13. The Eternal State

## **INTRODUCTION**

We will look at how God's prophetic plan for the future of the world is uncovered. It takes the reader through the seven key reasons why the word of God can be trusted. It defines some key end time debatable but significant terms which serve as door opener to eschatology. Furthermore, it introduces the reader as to whether human history on earth will cover seven thousand years.

You will get up-to-date information about knowledge and travel explosion, parables regarding the second coming, in depth exposition about Daniel chapter 12, the sign of the fig tree, twenty signs of the second coming and the prophetic signposts of the end time.

## **7 KEY REASONS WHY GOD'S WORD IS DEPENDABLE**

### **REASON 1**

The incredible unity of the Bible

1. 66 books of the Bible, 39 Old Testament and 27 New Testament books without a single contradiction or disagreement.
2. The Bible was written over a period of 1,600 years by 40 different human writers most of whom neither knew each other nor met before.
3. The authors came from different background. Moses was a statesman and prince; Joshua was a military general; Samuel was prophet and priest; Ezra was a priest and scribe; David was a shepherd, king, song writer and military general; Isaiah was a prophet; Daniel was a prophet and prime minister; Esther was a queen; Ruth was a foreigner and a housewife; Luke was a historian and a physician; Paul was a lawyer and a scholar; Peter was an apostle and a fisherman; Matthew was an apostle and a tax collector and James was a brother of Jesus Christ; yet their writings echoed God's disapproval of sin and His willingness to redeem a fallen world through the promised Messiah.
4. The Bible never contradicts itself despite the fact that it was written by wider spectrum of people coming from different backgrounds, locations and of diverse occupations who lived at different times on planet earth. It is startling to uncover that the Bible carries one continuous and domineering theme: God's love for fallen humanity and His plan for man's eternal redemption.

### **REASON 2**

The fulfilment of prophecy

The Bible is crammed with precise prophecies and their exact fulfilment:

1. In dealing with Palestine with particular reference to Israel as a nation and the land allotted to their ancestors which exists today. Israel regained possession of their homeland in 1967 after Jerusalem had come under Gentile control since 586 BC. A period of more than 2,500 years to prove the authenticity and authority of the word of God (Lk. 21.24).
2. In dealing with Gentile nations such as Egypt, Persia (Iran), Babylon (Iraq), Ethiopia and Greece. History and tradition of the Ancient Near East as indicated in the Bible does not contradict present day culture and history of the Middle East (Gen. 39.1; 2 Chron. 36.22; Gen. 2.13).
3. In dealing with peculiar ancient cities such as Jerusalem, Jordan and Damascus. The same cities exist today at their exact locations without any geographical discrepancy (Acts 9.1-2).
4. In dealing with rivers such as the Nile, Euphrates and Jordan. These rivers remain where they are and fulfil their purposes to humanity just as stated by the Scriptures (Gen. 2.14).

*In dealing with Christ – The day that he was crucified, over 30 OT prophecies were fulfilled:*

- The birth place of the Messiah as predicted in Micah 5.2 was to be Bethlehem. It was precisely and literally fulfilled in Matthew 2.1.
- A virgin will give birth to Christ (Is. 7.14 and literally fulfilled in Matt. 1.18, 21).
- Jesus will be sold for 30 pieces of silver (Zech. 11.12 and literally fulfilled in Matt. 26.15).
- Christ is a prophet like Moses (Deut. 18.15, 18 and fulfilled in John 4.25-26).

### **REASON 3**

Archaeological proof and historical precision of the Bible

There are more than 96 examples according to Unger's Bible Handbook.

1. Evidence of the river Euphrates in Iraq (Gen. 2.14).
2. The discovery of the Dead Sea Scrolls at Qumran proves the authenticity of the Bible as we have it today.
3. Evidence of the Garden of Eden.
4. Evidence of the Tower of Babel.



5. The Dead Sea and the annihilation of Sodom and Gomorrah. The devastating effects are similar to the aftermath of using modern day gem and nuclear weapons.
6. Fall of Jericho.
7. The two stone tablets of the 10 commandments discovered during 1990 Gulf War between the allied forces led by USA and Iraq.

#### **REASON 4**

Scientific evidence and accuracy of the Bible

1. The scientific fact that the earth is spherical confirming Isaiah 40.22. Originally, scientists believed that the earth was flat until the sea voyages of Columbus and other explorers in the 15<sup>th</sup> century.
2. The scientific proof that the earth is hanging in space confirming Job. 26.7. The discovery of the force of gravity and the writings of Sir Isaac Newton validate the Bible as the mother book of sciences.

#### **REASON 5**

The supernatural influence of the Bible

1. The gospel is still God's power of salvation to them that believe (Rom. 1.16).
2. The Bible is the inspired living word of God – because untold millions can testify of its transforming power in their lives – terminal sicknesses healed; cancer cases cured; broken families restored; drug addicts transformed; and for every born again child of God saved according Colossians 1.13.

#### **REASON 6**

The authority of Scripture

1. The Bible is deemed to be classified as the book of books. Supposedly, it is the oldest book on planet earth.
2. Both defendants and plaintiffs alike swear by it at the law courts to attest to the authenticity and validity of their statements.
3. The Scripture is assumed to contain the prescribed code of conduct needed for the progress and administration of our society. Thus the rules and regulations governing our societies are zeroed in on the precepts and concepts of the Bible.

#### **REASON 7**

Political confirmation

Political activities in the West, especially the revival of the old Roman Empire through the formation of the European Union (EU); the establishment of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) or the formation of the Group of 10 Industrialized Nations (G10) clearly confirm the prophecy or vision revealed to King Nebuchadnezzar in Daniel chapter 2 concerning the latter days (Dan. 2.28). Other political empires emerging from the East such as Russia and China are a force to reckon with. They seem to fulfil the biblical predictions in Ezekiel 38–39.

## UNDERSTANDING THE END TIME KEYS

### THE LAST DAYS (1 TIM. 4.1)

The prophecy that Jesus will return to Earth is a major doctrine within Christianity, which can be seen by its inclusion in the Nicene Creed. Many specific timeframes for the second coming have been declared by individuals and groups, although many of these dates came to pass without the fulfillment of the events predicted. An official statement of the Vatican, issued in 1993, asserted, "*we are already in the last hour*".

Biblical references of end time prophecies include:

- The Old Testament prophet Isaiah prophesied that in the end times the Kingdom of God would be established in Jerusalem, as chief among the nations (Isa. 2.2-3).
- The Old Testament prophet Hosea indicated that in the end times Israel would return to their land and seek the Lord their God (Hos. 3.4-5).
- The Apostle Paul wrote that there would be terrible times in the end times. People would have a form of godliness but denying its power (2 Tim. 3.1-5).
- The author of Hebrews wrote that the world was already in the end times (Heb. 1.2).
- James wrote that people would hoard wealth in the end times to their destruction (Jam. 5.3-5).
- The Apostle Peter indicated that in the end times even religious people would dismiss the idea of Christ's return (2 Pet. 3.3-4).
- We are living in the last days which start from the ministry of Jesus, his death and resurrection until his second coming (Mark 1.15).
- The outpouring of the Holy Spirit in fulfillment of Joel's prophecy depicts the last days (Acts 2.17-18).
- The inauguration of the church age (Acts 1.8, 2.38-42).

## THE RAPTURE

- It involves the resurrection and caught up to heaven of all Old Testament and New Testament dead saints (1 Thess. 4.16-18).
- Christ will appear in the air to take every member of the church alive to heaven before the 7 year tribulation period starts.
- Mortality must put on immortality and corruptible must put on incorruptible body at the rapture (1 Cor. 15.51-53).

## The Tribulation

- This will be a period of 7 years chaotic disorder on earth after the rapture of the church. It is a time of unparalleled destruction made up of satanic disturbances, wickedness and the wine of God's wrath poured upon the face of the earth as stated in Revelation chapters 6-19.
- The Bible describes it as a day equals to none, and a time of Jacob's troubles but he will be delivered out of it (Jer. 30.7).
- The church is not part of the great tribulation because her name is omitted between Revelation chapters 6-19.
- The great tribulation will be concluded by the battle of Armageddon.

## The second coming of Christ

- The second coming is also known as the Second advent of Christ (Jude 14-15; Rev. 19).
- Christ will return to the earth with the angels and the saints after the 7 year great tribulation stated in Revelation 6-19; Matthew 24.15-31 and Daniel 9.25-27.
- At the second advent of Christ comes to end the battle of Armageddon and to cast the Antichrist and the false prophet into the lake of fire alive (Jude 14-15; Zech. 14.5; Rev. 19.20).
- The Second Advent is when the feet of Christ will step on Mount Olivet at the eastern part of Jerusalem for the first time since the first advent (Zech. 14.4).

### **DANIEL'S 70<sup>TH</sup> WEEK**

- It is Daniel's 70 weeks of 7 years or 490 years (Dan. 9.27).
- The first 7 weeks of 7 years (49 years) was when the edict was passed by Cyrus to rebuild Jerusalem during the times of Ezra, Zerubbabel and Nehemiah (Dan. 9.25; Ezra 1.1-4).
- The second 62 weeks of 7 years (434 years) happened when the Messiah was cut off or crucified during the first advent (Dan. 9.26; Matt. 27.50-54).
- The last week of 7 years or the 70<sup>th</sup> week is the same as the 7year great tribulation period immediately after the rapture. The revelation of the Antichrist follows immediately. It's time of Jacob's troubles (Jer. 30:7).

### **THE ANTICHRIST AND THE FALSE PROPHET**

- Part of the account of the Antichrist and the False Prophet is recorded in Revelation 13.
- The Antichrist will be the head of the one world economic system for the first time in human history. He will form one world government and will demand universal worship and authority under one world religion (Rev. 13.16).
- He will oppose Christ and God and prevail over the saints in battle (2 Thess. 2.24; Rev. 13.7).
- While the Antichrist is a political ruler, the False Prophet will be a religious ruler and will add force to the work of the Antichrist (Rev. 13.14-15).

### **THE MARK OF THE BEAST**

- This will be a universal mark of the Antichrist which will serve purposes similar to NHIS, Passport, Credit and Debit cards, and national ID cards and many more (Rev. 13.16).
- This is the mark which will identify the subjects and followers of the Antichrist. The circumstances prevailing at the time will force millions to receive the mark which is the number of a man – 666 (Rev. 13.17-18).
- Some claim it will be a spiritual mark, but whether spiritual or physical, it will be peculiar mark impressed on the forehead or the right hand of the receiver (Rev. 14.9-10).
- God's wrath will pour on all those who have the mark of the beast.

### **THE 144,000 CHOSEN JEWS**

- These are born again Jews not Jehovah Witnesses who will miss the rapture of the church but will get saved in the first three and half years of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week which is the great tribulation (Rev. 7.1-8).
- They will serve as evangelists and minister extensively during the great tribulation period or Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week. They will be raptured to heaven after the end of their program.

### **THE TRIBULATION SAINTS**

- The sealing of the 144,000 evangelists to keep them from the trumpet judgments (Rev. 7.2-4).
- These are multitudes which will go through martyrdom but will be saved and raptured during the great tribulation. There are untold millions of tribulation saints mentioned in Revelation 7.9-17, 15.2, 20.4-5.
- This company of believers will miss the rapture of the church but will get saved during the great tribulation. It will include both living Jews and Gentiles who have ignored the word of God today. The Antichrist will be given power to wage war against them and overcome them during the great tribulation (Rev. 13.7-8).

### **THE BATTLE OF ARMAGEDDON**

- This is the next biggest war after the third world war or Gog and Magog.
- It is a time to reap the harvest of the earth (Rev. 14.14-20).
- The third world war will occur before the beginning of the great tribulation while Armageddon occurs at the end of the 7year tribulation. The Antichrist will marshal his allied forces against Israel as his first target and then the living saints at that time (Rev. 13.7-8). However, the appearance of Jesus will put an end to the battle of Armageddon. The blood bath will cover a space of 200 hundred miles (Rev. 14.20, 19.20-21).

### **THE MILLENNIUM**

- This is a time when all believers of all ages reign with Christ on earth for 1,000 years. The world will experience universal peace and tranquillity for the first time according to the message of the prophets (Isa. 65.18-25; Hab. 2.14).
- Satan will be bound and imprisoned by a great angel of God during that time for 1000 years and thrown into the bottomless pit as the first taste of God's wrath; and

that he should deceive the nations no more. After the 1,000 years he will be released for a while (Rev. 20.1-3).

### **THE BATTLE OF GOG AND MAGOG**

- It may be the 3<sup>rd</sup> World War
- Ezekiel 38-39
- Satan will be loosed for a while after the 1000 years. He will wage his final battle at Gog and Magog against Christ and the saints in the Holy City. Millions will be born during the 1000 years and many will follow Satan to wage the final battle of Gog and Magog (Rev.20.7-9).
- Satan will go out to deceive the nations living in the four quarters of the earth known as Gog and Magog. The number of them is like the sand of the sea (Rev. 20.7-8).
- Fire comes down from heaven to end the battle and the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire where the Antichrist and the false prophet are. The three representing the diabolical trinity of Satan will be the first to taste the lake of fire (Rev. 20.9-10, 19.20).

### **EXPOSITION: MATTHEW 24-25**

To understand end time events, believers need to properly explain and expound Matthew chapters 24-25 which deal with confusions surrounding the destruction of Jerusalem in AD 70; signs of the 2<sup>nd</sup> coming of Christ and signs of the end of the age.

There are three key questions leading to the 2<sup>nd</sup> coming of Christ and the end of the world (Mt. 24.1-3):

- The time Jerusalem will be destroyed and controlled by the Gentiles (Luke 21.24)
- 20 signs pointing to the 2<sup>nd</sup> coming of Christ (Mt. 24.4-8)
- 18 signs pointing to the end of the age (Mt. 24.9-26)

#### **The Non-Rapture Theory**

Adherents of this view do not buy the idea of any literal rapture. They reject the idea of bodies of dead saints resurrecting to meet the Lord Jesus in the air. However, they believe that at the end of the age, there shall be mass resurrection of both the just and the wicked (Dan. 12.2). Scriptural backing for this position is limited and does not enjoy massive support by the church.

### **THE MID-TRIBULATION RAPTURE THEORY**

This theory teaches that the church will be raptured during the mid-section of the great tribulation just after the three and half years. The theory claims that the church needed to be purged by God before being perfected (Eph. 4.11-12). It asserts that the last trumpet sound mentioned in 1 Corinthians 15.52 is identical to the one of the mid-tribulation period mentioned in Revelation 11:2-3, 15.

### **POST-TRIBULATION RAPTURE THEORY**

This theory asserts that the church will go through the 7year tribulation before being raptured at the return of the 2<sup>nd</sup> coming Christ. Some think this teaching is simply inconsistent with Scripture and the nature of God. In the days of Noah, God did not destroy the righteous with the wicked. Similarly, again, in the times of Lot, God did not destroy the righteous with the wicked. The church is the bride of Christ and will certainly not go through the great tribulation. Hence, the Pre-Tribulation Rapture Theory is what this book asserts.

### **PRE-TRIBULATION RAPTURE THEORY**

This theory teaches that the Body of Christ will be raptured just before the great tribulation. Presently it is the church which is preventing the revelation of the Antichrist. This theory enjoys massive Scriptural support compared to the rest of the theories indicated above, and it is what the writer affirms.

### **POST-MILLENNIAL VIEW**

This view asserts Christ will come and establish his kingdom on earth after the Millennium or 1000 years. It holds that the earth will go through reformation and experience peace through the spread and preaching of the Gospel. Contrary, the Bible does not promise any earthly paradise before the tribulation. Rather, the world will going through hard times in the last days as stated by Scripture (2 Tim. 3.1-7).

### **A-MILLENNIAL VIEW**

This theory holds the view that the Millennium is now and that there is no future millennial age. The theory asserts that the millennial peace is experienced in the church and that Satan is presently bound to prevent the spread of the Gospel. The present state of the world clearly indicates that Satan is not bound and is aggressively deceiving multitudes into his kingdom. Hence this theory is false and unacceptable.

### **PRE-MILLENNIAL VIEW**

This theory teaches that Christ will literally come during the Second Advent to establish his kingdom before the millennial age begins. This view is in conformity with Scripture and enjoys massive biblical support than the rest (Rev. 19.11-21; Jude 14-15).

### Parables regarding the 2<sup>nd</sup> coming of Christ

1. Parable of the fig tree (Mt. 24.32-33)
2. Parable of the good man of the house (Mt. 24.43-44)
3. Parable of the faithful servant (Mt. 24.45-51)
4. Parable of the ten virgins (Mt. 25.1-13)
5. Parable of the talents (Mt. 25.14-30)
6. Parable of the living Gentile nations at the return of Christ (Mt. 25.31-46)
7. Parable of the hidden treasure (Matt. 13.44)
8. Parable of the pearl of great price (Matt. 13.45-46)
9. Parable of the net cast into the sea (Matt. 13.47-50)
10. Parable of the two sons (Matt. 21.28-32)
11. Parable of the marriage feast (Matt. 22.2-14)

### **OVERVIEW OF THE BOOK OF REVELATION**

- The mystery of the seven church ages is explained in the first three chapters of Revelation. The Body of Christ which is the church militant is currently experiencing all the events of the seven church ages (Revelation chapters 1-3).
- The raptured church which is also known as the church triumphant from every nation, tongue, kindred and people redeemed by the blood of the Lamb, together with the Old Testament saints, the twenty-four elders and the four living creatures worship the Lamb at the throne of God (Revelation chapters 4-5).
- The breaking of the seal in Revelation chapter 5 by the Lamb ushered in the 7 year great tribulation. The great tribulation is made up of the seven seal, trumpet and bowl judgments of God. The 7-year great tribulation on earth or Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week occupies Revelation chapters 6-19.
- The second coming of Christ, the Millennium, the battle of Gog and Magog, the destiny of Satan, the Antichrist and the false prophet; the annihilation of the present universe, the white throne judgment, the ushering in of the new heaven and the new earth, the New Jerusalem and the eternal state occupies Revelation chapters 19-22.



## **THE LAST DAYS GENERATION**

- The first advent of Christ, the establishment of the church and the pouring out of the Spirit on all flesh confirms we are living in the last days (Heb. 1.1-2; Acts 2.15-18).
- This generation is fulfilling biblical prophecy about the last days since mockers and blasphemers walking after their own lusts have increased much more than human history had ever recorded (Jude 17-19).
- The last days shall come with perilous times. Men shall be lovers of themselves, boasters, proud, disobedient to parents, false accusers, despisers of those that are good, and lovers of pleasure more than lovers of God. Evil men shall wax worse and worse, deceiving and being deceived as vividly demonstrated in this age depicts this is the last days generation (2 Tim. 3.1-5, 13).
- Scoffers of today gratifying their ungodly lusts, and blaspheming the name and ministers of God clearly fulfills prophecies of the last days (2 Pet. 3.3).
- The presence of several antichrists and false prophets clearly indicates that we are in the last days (1 John 2.18).
- In the latter days some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of demons. It suggests clearly that the last days generation is this present age (1 Tim. 4.1-2).
- The massive church planting campaign and multiplication of indigenous ministries and ministers called into full time service of God fulfills biblical prophecy in the last days (Matt. 24.14).
- The preaching of the word of God through the internet, intranet, cell phones, radio broadcasting ministries and satellite television gospel preaching is confirming the fact that the word of God is not only out of control but reaching the unreached territories of the lost world. It is all taking place in this generation which demonstrates that we are in the last days (Matt. 24.14).

## **7000 YEARS OF HUMAN HISTORY**

Human history covering a space of 7000 years on earth is a theory of human assumption. It is not absolute and those who believe it simply read into Scripture. Commencing from the time of Adam until Jesus Christ, the theory assumes that if strict mathematical calculations is adhered to, then the time might either be over 4000 years or slightly below that. Some theologians assume that the 6 days God used to create the universe match the 6000 years of human existence on earth. And the 1 day Sabbath rest by God equals the 1000 year millennial age to come.

It makes it possible to understand the idea that the 7 days used in creation equal 7,000 years of human history. This theory could either be true or not. Moreover, the Bible affirms that a thousand years in the sight of God is like yesterday when it is past, and like a watch in the night (Ps. 90.4; 2 Pet. 3.8). Some few proofs as stated below can give us further insight into this theory.

### **THE PASSOVER PROOF**

The chronological calculation from Adam to Christ indicates that human history has covered a period of 4000 years. The institution of the Passover in the Old Testament bears several similarities with Christ who is given the New Testament confirmation as the Passover Lamb. Having said that, it means the Passover Lamb killed in the Old Testament was a type of Christ who was to come (Ex. 12.1-14; 1 Cor. 5.7).

God changed the month in which the Israelites were to be redeemed to be the first month of the year through the Passover. Similarly, stepping on planet earth for the first time, Jesus Christ came to change dates and years of human history forever. Without Christ who is the Passover Lamb, human history is in danger of being dateless and meaningless. The coming of Christ as the Passover Lamb brought meaning and sequence to human history, and has been an indisputable fact ever since (Ex. 12.2).

Another authentic proof of the Passover lamb which is a typology of Christ, is that none of its bones shall be broken; and it shall be a lamb without blemish (Ex. 12.5, 46-47). Christ perfectly fulfills this picture. Firstly, as the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world, and secondly, on the day of his crucifixion, none of his bones was broken (Num. 9.12; Jn. 1.29, 19.36).

The Passover Lamb was killed at twilight and so was Christ who gave up his spirit after the ninth hour or 3PM GMT (Ex. 12.6; Mk. 15.33-34). The death of the Passover lamb brought the greatest emancipation and redemption in Old Testament history. Comparatively, the death of Christ also resulted in the greatest redemption ever recorded in human history.

According to the directives given by God to Moses, the congregation had to take a lamb without blemish and keep it from the 10<sup>th</sup> day to the 14<sup>th</sup> day. Going by simple mathematical calculation, taking 10 from 14 leaves a difference of 4 days (Ex. 12.3, 6). Further to that, if a thousand years to the LORD is just like yesterday, then the 4000 years of human history from Adam to Christ equals 4 days in the sight of God representing the exact period the Passover lamb in the Old Testament was caged.

## **FROM CHRIST TO THE PRESENT TIME IS 2000 YEARS**

Literally, it is now 2 days in the sight of God or 2000 years ever since the Messiah stepped foot on planet earth to fulfill the prophetic agenda of God to lost humanity. Adding the 2000 years to the 4000 years equals 6000 years in approximation or 6 days in the sight of God. The date is now 2010 clearly indicating that we are living in borrowed. However, there can be lapses or human errors in the dates set above, therefore, it cannot be assumed to be authentic. And significantly, it is unwise to set dates when teaching Scriptures in prophecy especially the second coming of Christ.

## **THE LAST 1,000 YEARS**

The Millennial kingdom of Christ is deemed to cover 1000 years which might correspond with the 1 day of rest by God after 6 days of creation. It explains the theory that the 6 days used by God to create the universe equals 6000 years of human existence on earth from creation to present. Putting all together, the calculation will cover a period of 7000 years of human history on earth while from the perspective of God it is only 7 days calculated as follows:

Adam to Christ = 4000 years

Christ to present = 2000 years

Millennial age = 1000 years

Human history = 7000 years (or 7 days of God's creation)

## **KNOWLEDGE AND TRAVEL EXPLOSION**

Travel explosion confirms Daniel's prophecy (Dan. 12.4)

- Ford begins mass automobile production in 1903.
- The Wright brothers flew the first aircraft in 1904 contrary to scientific evidence, views and declaration in 1901 that metal cannot fly in the air.
- The jet age begins with the German turbine gas engine in 1939.
- Space exploration begins with the launching of the Soviet Sputnik 1 in 1957. Russia is believed to lead in the total number of satellites in space. The US, Canada, France, Germany and many others have their own space stations. Satellites range in weight from few pounds to over five tons.<sup>1</sup>
- The first astronauts from America led by Neil Armstrong set foot on the moon on Sunday 20 July 1969 as hundreds of millions of people on earth watched over the TV. They landed on the Southwestern shore of the Sea of Tranquility.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Number 5908 of 7700 Encyclopedia, Tan, Paul Lee.

<sup>2</sup> Number 5916 of 7700 Encyclopedia, Tan, Paul Lee.

- The first supersonic airliner, Concord which is faster than sound and travels at a speed of 2140 kilometers per hour or twice the speed of conventional aircraft was manufactured by two companies from France and Britain. Its first flight was 2 March 1969; introduced into active service and into the market in 1976 at a cost price 23 million pounds. It was withdrawn from operation after 23 years of service.
- The fastest train known as the Grand Vitesse was built by France at a speed of 235mph in 1981.

.. And knowledge shall increase (Dan. 12.4)

- Seventy percent of the medicines in use today were developed after World War II. Knowledge is doubling every 10 years. More than 80% of all the scientists who have ever lived are alive today. More than 15,000 science journals are being published, many with worldwide circulation<sup>3</sup>.

The following are few examples drawn from the book of Norman K. Robertson<sup>4</sup> about the explosion of knowledge:

1. From 400 –1900 AD knowledge doubled in 1500yrs.
2. From 1900 –1950 knowledge doubled again in 50yrs.
3. From 1950 – 1965 knowledge doubled again in 15yrs.
4. From 1965 – 1975 knowledge doubled in 10yrs.
5. Since the 1990s, knowledge is expected to double every 6 months.
6. Open heart surgery and human organ transplantation begins in the 1950s.
7. Radio transmission begins in the 1900s.
8. Color TV transmission begins in 1929.
9. Harvard University begins the operation of 1<sup>st</sup> digital computers in 1944.
10. Japan introduces pocket size transistor radios in 1952.
11. US begins trans-Atlantic TV and satellite network in 1962.
12. Oil refinery for petrol develops in 1907.
13. High voltage electricity develops in the 1920s.

---

<sup>3</sup>Tan, Paul Lee: *Encyclopedia of 7700. P. 6440 Illustrations:*

<sup>4</sup> Robertson, N.K., *Understanding End Time Prophecy, Pages 23-28.*

14. Hydro-electric power and huge dams construction begin in the 1930s.
15. Opening of the Panama Canal in 1916.
16. St. Lawrence Seaway allows vessels to sail to the heart of US in 1959.
17. Off-shore oil drilling begins in 1947.
18. Nuclear energy for electrical purposes develops in the 1970s.
19. Genetic engineering develops in the 1970s.

### **THE THREE CRUCIAL QUESTIONS**

2 different categories of signs shall occur (Matt 24-25; Mk. 13; Lk. 21)

- 20 Signs of the 2<sup>nd</sup> coming of Christ
- 21 Prophetic signposts of the end of the age

Matthew 24.3 defines the three notable questions of the end of the age:

1. Tell us when will these things be?
2. And what will be the sign of your coming?
3. And of the end of the age?

Q. 1. When will these things be?

- There shall not be a stone left upon one another foretells the destruction of the temple and Jerusalem (Mt. 24.1-2).
- This was fulfilled in AD 70 when Jerusalem was destroyed by the Romans under General Titus which terminated the existence of Israel as a nation and diffused her to the Gentile nations.
- Jerusalem was taken into captivity to the Gentile nations from AD 70 until 14 May 1948 fulfilling Luke 21.24.
- God through the United Nations re-established the Jewish state as a nation in May 1948 after being dispersed for 2,500 years counting from 586 BC. This generation therefore witnessed the budding of the fig tree which stands for Israel becoming a nation again according to the prediction by Jesus Christ in Matthew 24.32-33.

## RE-GATHERING OF ISRAEL: 18 FACTS TO KNOW

1. The rapture generation will witness the re-gathering of the Jews according to the Scriptures which is happening now.
2. The Bible prophesied the return of the Jews to their homeland and Israel duly became a nation again in 1948 through the auspices of the United Nations.
3. God will gather both the outcast of Israel and Judah in the latter days back to their homeland (Isa. 11.12).
4. In the last days God will gather all the Israelites from all countries (Jer. 32.37-38).
5. God promised to assemble Israel and give the land He swore to their fathers back to them (Ezek. 11.17).
6. God promised to accept Israel in the last days (Ezek. 20.34, 41-42).
7. God promised to bring Israel back to their homeland (Ezek. 36.24).
8. The valley full of dry bones is a symbol of scattered Israel until 1948 (Ezek. 37.1-10).
9. Like the resurrected dry bones in the valley, God will resurrect Israel in the latter days and bring them together (Ezek. 37.11-12).
10. God will put His Spirit in them and they shall know the LORD as God and they shall live (Ezek. 37.13-14).
11. God will unite both Israel & Judah and make them one nation (Ezek. 37.21-22).
12. In the latter days, God will take away the stony heart from the Israelites, and give them a heart of flesh, and put a new Spirit within them. They shall dwell in the land God gave to their fathers and they shall become the people of God (Ezek. 36.26-28).
13. Israel will be saved in the last days – God will sprinkle clean water on them. Thus this signifies the blood of Christ sprinkled on their conscience and a new heart given to them (Ezek. 36.25-26).
14. In the last days Israel will walk in the ways of God (Ezek. 36.27).
15. In the last days Israel will become the people of God (Ezek. 36.28).
16. God will be the God of the Jews in the latter days (Ezek. 36.28).
17. God will save Israel from all uncleanness (Ezek. 36.29).
18. Israel will live in abundant prosperity and none shall lift a tongue against her in those days (Ezek. 36.29-30).

## **JERUSALEM COMING UNDER JEWISH CONTROL AFTER OVER 2500 YEARS**

- Jerusalem shall be trodden underfoot by the Gentiles (Luke 21.24). Israel was not independent but under Roman domination in the time of Christ.
- Israel had been under the control of various Gentile nations which started in 608 BC. Babylon finally took Israel into captivity to fulfill the prophecy of Jeremiah in 586 BC.
- 586 BC Jerusalem was finally taken into Babylonian captivity.
- Since 70 AD Jerusalem has been controlled by several Gentile rulers until 1967.
- In 70 AD the Romans captured Jerusalem under General Titus.
- In 614 AD the Persians captured Jerusalem.
- In 637 AD Caliph Omar captured Jerusalem.
- In 1099 AD the Crusaders captured Jerusalem.
- In 1187 AD Salidan captured Jerusalem.
- In 1250 AD the Mamelukes from Egypt captured Jerusalem.
- In 1517 AD the Turks captured Jerusalem.
- In 1917 AD the British captured Jerusalem.
- In 1967 AD the Jews captured Jerusalem during the 6day Israeli/Arab war from 5<sup>th</sup> to 10 June 1967.
  
- Israel was made a nation again by the United Nations in May 14, 1948.
- During the 6day war – 7<sup>th</sup> June 1967, Israel repossessed Jerusalem after 2,500 yrs.
- Luke 21.24 was fulfilled in 1967 – thus ending the Gentiles control over Jerusalem.
- Jerusalem coming under Jewish control in 1967 is a clear sign of the second coming.
- Since the Babylonian captivity from 608 B.C until 1967 Jerusalem was under the control of the Gentiles. The times of the Gentiles started fulfilling in 1967.

## 20 SIGNS OF THE SECOND COMING OF CHRIST

Q.2. What will be the signs of the 2<sup>nd</sup> coming of Christ? (Matt. 24.3)

The answer to this question is given in Matthew 24.7-14, 21-51

1. Deceptions (Matt. 24.4-5, 11, 24)
2. Harsh economic conditions such as inflation, increase in the rate of unemployment and businesses going into liquidation as a result of embezzlement of funds, losses, and the recent worldwide credit crunch (Mt. 24.21-22).
3. False prophets shall rise (Matt. 24.24; Rev. 13).
4. False Christ shall increase in number (Mt. 24.23-26).
5. Wars and rumors of wars. The world has experienced two major wars in 1914 to 1918 and 1939 to 1945; and the present Gulf war (Matt. 24.6-7).
6. Famine (Matt. 24.7; Rev. 6.5-6)
7. Pestilence such as HIV/AIDS and cancer (Matt. 24.7; Rev. 6.8).
8. Earthquakes and landslides (Matt. 24.7; Rev. 6.12-17)
9. Anti-Semitism – Israel coming under deep seated hatred (Matt. 24.9; Mark 13.6, 13).
10. Offences (Matt. 18.1-10)
11. Betraying one another (Matt. 24.9; Mark 13.12).
12. Lawlessness abounding (Matt. 24.12).
13. Decrease in love and devotion to the LORD (2 Tim. 3; Matt. 24.12-13).
14. Increase in missionary activities (Matt. 24.14).
15. It shall be like the days of Noah – eating and drinking, marriage etc. (Mt. 24.37-39).
16. The hour itself is hidden but not the signs – it's a mystery (Mt. 24.36, 42).
17. Readiness to meet the second coming (Mt. 24.43-47).
18. The sign of procrastination and lethargy (Mt. 24.39, 48-51).



19. Increase satanic powers and activities (Matt. 24.24; 2 Thess. 2.8-12; Rev. 16.14, 19.20).
20. The sign of the fig tree (Mt. 24.32-34)....

### **THE SIGN OF THE FIG TREE**

What is the secret behind the Fig Tree? (Matt. 24.32-34)

1. The Fig Tree stands for the rebirth of Israel as a nation (Jer. 29.17).
2. The Fig Tree stands for the re-gathering of the Jews from the Gentile nations.
3. The Fig Tree is a symbol of prosperity and peace (1 Kings 4.25; 2 Kings 18.31).
4. Israel will be a key sign in the second coming.
5. The fig tree is one of the four most important symbols in Israel.
6. The fig tree explains the rapture generation. (Matt. 24.32-34).
7. The rapture generation shall witness the rebirth of Israel as a nation.
8. Israel ceased to be a nation since 586 BC after the Babylonian captivity.
9. This generation witnessed the rebirth of Israel in 14 May 1948. Hence it's the rapture generation.
10. The rapture generation shall witness the sign of the budding fig tree.
11. The budding fig tree stands for the rebirth of Israel.
12. The budding fig tree stands for the re-gathering of the Israel in the latter days.
13. Note that the Babylonian captivity of Israel started in 608 BC. Israel was finally taken over in 586 BC. It continued throughout the Persian, Grecian and Roman captivities. Throughout this period Israel ceased to be a nation until AD 70 when Jerusalem was completely destroyed under the command of Titus, a Roman General. Israel had been under Roman control and the domination of the Gentiles until Jerusalem was completely redeemed in 1967 covering more than 2,500 years in diaspora.
14. Israel was then trodden under foot by the Gentiles and ceased to be a nation until her restoration in May 14, 1948 to fulfill the word of God in Luke 21.24.

## PROPHETIC SIGNPOSTS OF THE END TIMES

Q.3. What will be the signs of the end of the world? (Matt. 24.3)

It will be appropriate to explain Daniel's 70 weeks before explicating the signs of the end time.

Explaining Daniel's 70 Weeks (Dan. 9.25-27)

1. Daniel's 70 weeks of 490 years (Dan. 9.25-27).
2. Judah went into the 70 years captivity as prophesied by Jeremiah.
3. After 7 weeks of 7 years equaling 49 years shall Cyrus pass a decree to set the Jews free after 70 years in captivity according to the word of God through Jeremiah. The decree to restore and build the Temple and the walls at Jerusalem was fulfilled in the times of Ezra, Nehemiah and Zerubbabel (Ezra 1.1-4).
4. The Messiah who is the Savior will be cut off after 62 weeks of 7 years equaling 432 years (making  $7+62=69$  weeks). Thus, Daniel predicted the death of Jesus Christ in the New Testament in his 70 weeks prophecy (7 weeks and 62 weeks or  $7+62=69$  weeks.  $70-69=1$  week still in the future).
5. Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week is the 1 week left after the 69 weeks were fulfilled.
6. The 1 week which equals 7 years is the period the Anti-Christ will rule the world under one world government during the great tribulation.
7. The 7 years represent the great tribulation or times of Jacob's troubles as predicted in Matt. 24.9-26; Jer. 30.7; Rev. 6-19.
8. The Anti-Christ signs a peace treaty with Israel for 7 years (Dan. 9.27).
9. The Anti-Christ breaks the peace treaty after 42 months or 3yrs 6months to commence a period of severe tribulation the type of which had never happened since the foundation of the world (Dan. 9.27).

## THE 21 PROPHETIC SIGNS OF THE END TIME

### SIGN 1

#### Travel Explosion

- In the latter days men shall run to and fro (Dan. 12.4).

- It includes the manufacturing of travel gadgets to facilitate the movement of human beings and commodities. The fastest equipments used to transport humans and other items have been invented in this generation including trips to outer space.

## **SIGN 2**

### **Increase in knowledge**

And knowledge shall increase (Dan. 12.4). This sign both fulfills the coming of Christ and the end of the world. In our era knowledge is increasing in explosive proportions unequalled to any generation in human history.

## **SIGN**

### **Deception and rise of cults**

Deception, cults and false prophets shall rise (Mt. 24.4-5, 11, 23-24; 1 Tim. 4.1-2). The theory of evolution by Charles Darwin; JWs by C.T. Russell, Joseph Smith's Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Days Saints (Mormons), Christian Science and many others clearly indicate we are in the last days.

Typical traits of Cults suggest that they deny: the Holy Spirit, blood of Christ, the Virgin birth, the deity of Christ, the humanity of Christ, the 2<sup>nd</sup> coming of Christ, heaven & hell, salvation by faith in Christ, Scriptures as inspired by God and salvation by grace through faith (2 Tim. 2.3-5; 1 Jn. 4.1,3; 2Pet. 2.2). Contrary, Cults believe in their magnetic leaders and have their own distinct scriptures rated equally or higher than the Bible.

## **SIGN 4**

### **World-wars(Mt.24.6-7)**

- Over 70,000 stockpiles of hydrogen/nuclear/chemical bombs by nations capable to destroy the world 20 times over. The latest countries to be involved in the nuclear race are North Korea, Syria and Iran.
- The 1<sup>st</sup> World War started from 1914 to 1918 fought by 28 countries. 10 million soldiers and 10 million civilians killed and millions more died of tuberculosis which was the aftermath of the war.
- The 2<sup>nd</sup> World war started from 1939 to 1945 and involved almost every nation in the world. Billions of properties including thousands of church buildings were destroyed in Europe. The war recorded untold number of military and civilian casualties excluding the extermination of 6 million Jews by the Nazi regime of Germany in the gas chambers. Unconfirmed statistics record about 17 million military and 43 million civilian fatalities.

- The nuclear age begins with America bombing Hiroshima and Nagasaki in Japan during the 2<sup>nd</sup> World War in 1945. The aftermath of the bomb which ended the war is still felt today.
- Over 50 nations now produce nuclear weapons. Some claim it is for peaceful and economic purposes. Presumably, around 80 nations have nuclear capabilities.

## **SIGN 5**

### **Famine and mass hunger (Mt. 24.7)**

- Developing nations are facing very serious food shortages.
- Over 100 countries are importers of food especially cereals and meat.
- The world records high infant mortality due to malnutrition and starvation. Over 30 million children over the world die annually.
- The world's population is over 7 billion and 5 billion is estimated to face starvation to death due to unemployment, recession, poverty and ecological changes.

## **SIGN 6**

### **Ecological disturbances and Natural calamities (Mt. 24.7; Lk. 21.11)**

- Pestilence refers to epidemic and deadly diseases such cancer, HIV/AIDS, kidney failure, heart attacks, tuberculosis and several other diseases hardly diagnosed by medical means.
- Green house effect which causes carbon dioxide to destroy the ozone layer. This causes the earth to get hotter and hotter instead getting cooler and cooler. It is also causing the cooling system of the world, which is the ice berg to melt gradually. The world's forest zone is depleting and sub-Saharan Africa is turning into a desert zone. Changes in weather pattern, recording of moderate rains below normal levels and drying of river beds are all causes of green house activities.

## **SIGN 7**

### **Earthquakes in various places (Mt. 24.7; Lk. 21.11)**

- Europe recorded 137 earthquakes in the 14<sup>th</sup> century and several others since then especially in Eastern Europe.
- The Chinese earthquake in 2008 before the Olympic Games killed thousands and destroyed untold value of properties.

- The earthquake in Haiti in January 2010 destroyed billions of properties and killed over 200,000 people.
- The Tsunami flood in December 2006 killed over 500,000. More than 250,000 were not found and properties worth billions of dollars were destroyed.

## **SIGN 8**

### **Russia's military campaign in the Middle East**

- Russia is fulfilling Ezekiel Chapters 38 & 39. Persia (Iran), Ethiopia and Libya will all join forces with Russia to attack Israel (Ezek. 38.5). Gomer from the house of Togarmah are countries from the North, or Asia Minor especially Turkey will join the attack against Israel (Ezek. 38.6). Russia and her allied forces will attack Israel in the latter days when Israel is at peace but Gog or Russia shall be defeated by God (Ezek. 38.8, 16).
- Russia assisted Egypt in the war against Israel in 1956 and has been involved in several military agreements with Middle East countries.
- The Arabs used Russian military expertise and equipments in the war against Israel in 1967.
- Russia backs the Arabs in the Yom Kippur war against Israel in 1973 with thousands of armored vehicles more than the quantities used in the 2<sup>nd</sup> World War.
- Russia is secretly involved in helping Arab countries such as Iran & Syria to build nuclear weapons.
- Prior to the 1973 Arab-Israeli War, Russia had given the Arab nations about \$6 billion in military aid since 1955. Of this, about 3.1 billion dollars went to Egypt, 1.2 billion to Iraq, 950 million to Syria and almost 600 million to Algeria. During the war, heavy losses of Soviet-supplied equipment under the Arab forces were suffered, including at least half a billion dollars worth of late-type Russia aircraft. But so great was the flow of Soviet resupply that all equipments lost by the Arabs during the war were replaced by mid-November that year.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>5</sup>Tan, Paul Lee: *Encyclopedia of 7700 Illustrations*

**SIGN 9****The rise of Socialist China**

- China is gradually becoming economic and military force in the world. China is quickly asserting itself as a formidable partner with developing countries including Africa through the provision of grants and partaking in developmental projects.
- China will attack Israel in order to fulfill her prophetic destiny during the second half of the great tribulation. China fits the prophetic agenda mentioned in Revelation 9.13-21.
- Revelation 9.17 describes military equipments used during China's intervention in the Middle East. In 1971, China has the capacity to field 200 million oriental army fulfilling Revelation. 9.16.
- China will be involved in the battle of Armageddon in the last days. The war will be led by the Antichrist and his allied forces (Rev. 16.12-16).

**SIGN 10****Israel at Peace with her neighbors**

- In the last days Israel will sign a peaceful treaty with her neighbors and will dwell in safety (Ezek. 38.8). In March 26, 1979, Israel signed a peaceful treaty with Egypt.
- Gog (Russia & Allies) will attack Israel in the last days when Israel is at peace with her neighbors (Ezek. 38.11-12). This seems to be a possibility of a 3<sup>rd</sup> world war but God will defeat the allied forces (Ezek. 38.14-17).

**SIGN 11****The European Union and G8 Nations (Dan. 2.31-35)**

1. The EU fits the remains of the Roman Empire according the Daniel's prophecy of the revived Roman Empire.
2. The Group of 8 nations (G8) also fit the 10 toes of the revived Roman Empire. The G8 nations are USA, Russia, Britain, Germany, France, China, Italy and Japan.
3. A stone cut without hands struck the iron legs of the image and broke them into pieces (Dan. 2.34) Jesus will strike the allied forces of the Antichrist to end the battle of Armageddon to consummate the kingdom of the revived Roman Empire.

4. For now, the G8 and the EU nations could number more than the ten toes or ten horns of the image. The Antichrist would reduce the kingdoms to 10 according to Bible prophecy (Rev. 13.1).
5. The Antichrist will certainly control 10 kingdoms signified by the ten horns in Daniel 7.7 and Revelation 13.1.
6. The Antichrist and his 10nation kingdom shall prosper and destroy the holy people (Dan. 8.23-24).
7. 3 of the 10nation kingdom shall fall leaving 7 kingdoms or 7 heads. It means the 10 horns of the Antichrist with crowns shall be reduced to the 7 heads, kingdoms or allied nations in support of the Antichrist (Dan. 7.8; Rev. 13.1).

## **SIGN 12**

### **The outpouring of the Holy Spirit**

- There shall be a mighty outpouring of the Holy Spirit in the latter days according to the prophecy of Joel (Joel 2.28-32).
- Peter attested to the message of Joel by referred to the present-day outpouring of the Holy Spirit as one of the signs in the last days (Acts 2.15-18).
- The present-day Pentecostal revival which started in the 1900s and the Charismatic Renewal which started in the 1960s until now all confirm the end time prophecies by the prophet Joel and the apostle Peter.
- The massive ministry of the word of God, the ministry of the Holy Spirit and church planting activities headed by the main line churches and the charismatic Pentecostal denominations clearly affirm the prophecy of Christ that the message of the Gospel has to be preached to all nations then the end will come (Matt. 24.14).

## **SIGN 13**

### **Space exploration**

- Signs in the sun, moon and stars – This generation witnessed the beginning of activities in space started by the Soviet Union in 1957; followed by the planting of the American flag on the moon confirms the validity of the Gospel message by Christ (Lk. 21.25).
- The Russia Sputnik in 1957 and the establishment of space stations by countries like USA, Russia, Germany and other advanced countries in the 1980s and 1990s confirm Luke 21.25.

- International satellite networks to enhance nuclear programs, the possibility of satellite television transmissions all seek to prove the authenticity of the word of God (Luke 21.25).

## **SIGN 14**

### **Distress among nations**

- The world is looking helpless and confused without any remedies to economic difficulties such as the recent credit recession, galloping inflation and uncontrolled levels of unemployment in both developed and developing countries is bringing distress to the nations (Lk. 21.25).
- Terrorism and suicide bombings, the attack on the World Trade Centre, the bombing of the US embassies in Kenya, uncontrolled population explosion, civil wars and social unrests pose huge challenges governments and to societies (Lk. 21.25).

## **SIGN 15**

### **Men's heart failing them for fear (Luke 21.26)**

- The world is experiencing high mortality rate than ever. Motor car accidents, suicide, assassinations keep increasing at alarming proportions.
- Strain, stress, wickedness and challenges of life are causing cardio diseases to reach unprecedented levels despite the advancement of scientific methods of solving human and medical problems. In the USA alone, heart disease is the number one killer.

## **SIGN 16**

### **Increase in lawlessness (Matt. 24.12)**

- The love of many will grow cold due to lawlessness and iniquity. Increase in criminal activities, breaking of traffic regulations and the absence of rule of law in our democracy is affecting the fiber of society (Matt. 24.12).
- Widespread and unprecedented increase in rape and abortion has contributed to a complete breakdown of our value and moral system as a nation. The unprecedented spate of armed robbery is making the vulnerable and the innocent look helpless and losing hope in life. Wicked men are indeed going from bad to worse (2 Tim. 3.13).
- Illegal drug explosion such opium, heroin and cocaine has reached rocket income levels of about \$40 billion annually inciting many to become drug barons. Raffle



draws and lottery organized by companies to lure millions of innocent citizens is nearing epidemic levels.

## **SIGN 17**

### **Physical, spiritual and societal breakdown (2 Tim. 3.1-4; Lev. 20.13)**

1. Worldwide divorce rate has reached unparalleled proportions and the world is finding it difficult to cope with the issue of single parenting.
2. Sexual abuse of children and child neglect has reached its highest point in history. The number of street children are increasing and the state organs find it difficult to match the challenge. Child labor still remains a challenging social phenomenon.
3. 1 out of 4 crimes in Britain and USA are committed by teenagers and there seems to be a substantial increase in teenage suicide.
4. Gay marriage has become a big social and religious issue. In the Church of England, some senior ministers consent to the same sex marriage. Over 25 million homosexuals are in the USA alone.
5. Pornography is a huge challenging issue considering its massive patronage in both the print and the electronic media. Over 15 million pornographic magazines are sold each month in the USA alone. Several untold millions are sold in Europe and other developed nations.
6. Divorce seems to be an epidemic in society. Pastors, Christians, unbelievers are all falling victims of this societal canker. Over 65% marriages of developed and developing countries end in divorce.
7. Abortion is a sensitive weapon used by the enemy to wreck the lives of unborn children who have right to life. Over 125 million abortions (50% under 18 years) are committed in the USA yearly.
8. Alcohol and the use of illicit drugs is a menace in society. A large percentage of the youth are becoming addicted to drugs which is a source of continuous worry to several parents. Over 70% of the youth in High School in the UK and USA are involved in alcohol and drugs.
9. There is a sharp rise in rape and sexual perversion such as lesbianism, masturbation, incest, bestiality, child abuse and homosexuality all over the world (Lev. 20.13).

**SIGN 18****The sign of Sodom and Gomorrah**

- The world today is similar to the days of Lot: they ate, drank, bought, sold, planted and built until the day Lot was taken out from the country (Ezek. 16.49-50; Luke 17.28-29).
- Jesus likened the days of his coming and the end of the world to the moral conditions which prevailed in the days of Noah (Gen. 6.5; Matt. 24.37; Luke 17.28-29)

**SIGN 19****Pleasure will take the place of God (2 Tim. 3.4)**

- Men shall be worshippers of pleasure and entertainment instead of God.
- In Europe and America, billions of dollars are spent on casinos every month much more than aid given to needy countries.
- Sharp rise in time spent in watching TV.

The warning to this generation is pleasure and entertainment attracts the wrath of God when it's worshipped by society. It happened in the days of Lot and Noah brought their world to an abrupt end. This age is likened to that sodomy generation.

**SIGN 20****Population explosion**

The population of London during the sixteenth century was 150,000. It is now 11 million. Paris had 200,000 people in the seventeenth century, now, 7 million. New York City was a town of 64,000 in 1800. It is now a big city of 10 million.<sup>6</sup>

- The world's population hit 1 billion for the first time in 1830.
- It hit 2 billion about 100 years latter in 1930.
- It took just 31 years to hit 3 billion in 1961.
- It took 15 years to hit 4 billion in 1976.
- It took 11 years to hit 5 billion in 1987.
- It took 8 years to hit 6 billion in 1995<sup>7</sup>

Ecological imbalances, starvation, famine and diseases seem to pose a grave threat to the present population explosion. Check the continuation in the second volume. Already blessed!

---

<sup>6</sup>Tan, Paul Lee: *Encyclopedia of 7700 Illustrations*.

<sup>7</sup>Robertson, N.K. *End Time Prophecy*, Pages 43-44.

**SIGN 21****The Abomination that causes Desolation**

In the Hebrew Bible, the phrase "abomination of desolation" is found in three texts in the book of Daniel, all within the literary context of end time visions.

"And he shall make a firm covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease; and upon the wing of *abominations* [shall come] one that makes desolate; and even unto the full end, and that determined, shall [wrath] be poured out upon the desolate" (Dan.9.27).

"And forces shall stand on his part, and they shall profane the sanctuary, even the fortress, and shall take away the continual [burnt-offering], and they shall set up the *abomination that makes desolate*" (Dan. 11.31).

"And from the time that the continual [burnt-offering] shall be taken away, and the *abomination that makes desolate* set up, there shall be a thousand and two hundred and ninety days" (Dan. 12.11).

**In the Gospels**

The term is used by Jesus Christ in the Olivet discourse, according to both Gospels of Matthew and Mark.

"So when you see the abomination of desolation spoken of by the prophet Daniel, standing in the holy place (let the reader understand), then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains" (Matt. 24.15).

"But when you see the abomination of desolation standing where it ought not to be (let the reader understand), then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains" (Mk. 13.14).

"But when you see Jerusalem surrounded by armies, then know that its desolation has come near. Then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains..." (Lk. 21.20-21).

Notice the Luke uses the phrase *Jerusalem surrounded by Armies* in place of *the Abomination of Desolation [standing where it ought not to be]* in Matthew and Mark. Thus, the Abomination of Desolation is used as a synonymous title for the Roman armies surrounding Jerusalem. But Jesus used it to signify the image of the beast which the false prophet will erect on the wing of the temple demanding worship.

## THE 2<sup>ND</sup> COMING OF CHRIST AND THE COMING ANTICHRIST

1. The Rapture of the church
2. Biblical basis of the Rapture
3. 7 Biblical Raptures
4. 7 Biblical Resurrections
5. Events in Heaven
6. Events on Earth
7. The Revelation of the Antichrist
8. 7 years reign of the Antichrist
9. The Mark of the Beast
10. The Great Tribulation
11. Mid-tribulation preaching
12. The Ministry of the Two Witnesses
13. The fall of Babylon the Great
14. The tribulation Saints
15. The battle of Armageddon
  
16. 7 key reasons why the word of God is dependable
17. Understanding end time key terms
18. 7000 years of human history?
19. Knowledge and travel explosion
20. The three crucial questions
21. 20 signs of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Coming of Christ
22. The sign of the Fig Tree
23. Re-gathering of Israel – 18 facts to know
24. 21 Prophetic signposts of the end time

## THE 2<sup>ND</sup> COMING OF CHRIST AND THE END OF THE WORLD

1. The 2<sup>nd</sup> coming of Christ
2. Biblical basis of the Second Advent
3. The manner of His 2<sup>nd</sup> Coming
4. When will be the time of His 2<sup>nd</sup> Coming be?
5. 7 Purposes of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Coming of Christ
6. 7 biblical bases for the glorified bodies of the Saints
7. 11 Contrasts between the Rapture and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Coming of Christ
8. Binding Satan for 1,000 years
9. The Millennial age
10. The battle of Gog and Magog
11. The end of the world
12. The Great White Throne Judgment
13. The Eternal State

## THE RAPTURE OF THE CHURCH

### **The certainty of his coming**

The 2<sup>nd</sup> coming of Christ is such a major program of God in Scripture that it enjoys a wider support from the Law, the Prophets, the Writings and the New Testament. Angels testified about it. Jesus Christ himself contributed to this doctrine of eschatology. This collection of evidence makes the Second Advent so certain and inevitable.

### **The prophets predicted it**

Zechariah asserted that the LORD shall come with all the saints with him (Zech. 14.5). Daniel saw that in the latter days, the little horn shall make war with the saints and shall prevail against them until the Ancient of Days shall come to stop the war and judge the little horn which is the Antichrist. The saints shall then possess the kingdom (Dan. 7.21-22).

### **The patriarchs predicted it**

Enoch saw the LORD coming with ten thousands of his saints to execute judgment on earth. Abraham likewise looked for a city which had foundations, whose maker and builder is God. It is the future dwelling place of saints of all time (Jude 14-15; Heb. 11.8-10).

### **Angels predicted it**

After a cloud received Jesus out of the sight of the disciples, two men in white robes believed to be angels stood at the very spot Jesus ascended and predicted that Jesus will come in the same manner he ascended to heaven (Acts 1.9-11).

### **Christ himself predicted it**

Jesus compared the days of his coming to the days of Noah. People fulfilled all the deeds of the flesh and knew not until Noah entered the ark just as it is being witnessed in today's world. Jesus further promised many mansions in the house of his Father. And after he has completed with the preparations he will come and take both the dead and living saints to enjoy eternity with him there (Matt. 24.37-41; John 14.1-3).

The pedigree of people who predicted the second coming makes it authentic and reliable. The present delay of the second coming does not nullify the word of God. Rather, the doorway of salvation is still opened until God's program for the church age is fully accomplished.

### **What is the Rapture?**

- Rapture means caught up or snatch away.
- The rapture like the Trinity is not in the Bible but the essence, idea, importance, doctrine or principle is clearly stated.
- It is the Church which is the body of Christ being caught up within atomic second to meet the LORD in the air and thus remains with the LORD forever. Moreover, Jesus declares that if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, there you may be also. (1 Thess. 4.17; John 14.3).
- The rapture is the next major event on the prophetic calendar of God (Jn. 14.3; 1 Thess. 4.16-17).

All living saints will be translated at the rapture. It means we shall put on our real spiritual bodies according God's eternal program and purpose. The Scripture makes a clear distinction between natural and spiritual body. So also is the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption; it is raised in incorruption: It is sown in dishonor; it

is raised in glory: it is sown in weakness; it is raised in power: It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body. There is a natural body, and there is a spiritual body (1 Cor. 15.42-44).

If we obtained the nature of the first Adam which was earthy, it is of necessity to obtain the nature of the second Adam who is the Lord from heaven. And as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly; because flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God. We can only enter heaven with spiritual bodies which is obtained only through the process of the rapture (1 Cor. 15.47-50).

The rapture is a mystery revealed to Paul which will involve the resurrection of all the Old Testament and New Testament dead and living saints: Behold, I show you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality. So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory? (1 Cor. 15.51-55)

### **BIBLICAL BASES OF THE RAPTURE**

The rapture will take place just before the great tribulation as written in Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week prophecy. The rapture is a doctrine firmly engrained in Scripture as we shall see in the following paragraphs:

#### **Jesus Christ taught it**

According to the Gospel there are already many mansions in the house of the Father. Our Savior has gone to put the mansions in a state of completion and that is where the church will spend eternity with him. The only medium to go to this place of abode prepared by the Lord is through the rapture (John 14.3).

#### **The Apostle Paul taught it**

He indicated that it is a mystery which involves the transformation of bodies. Within a twinkle of an eye all dead and living Old Testament and New Testament saints shall receive spiritual bodies capable to meet living conditions in heaven. The Apostle Paul asserts it will be a time when the church will be caught up together in the clouds, and meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord (1 Cor. 15.51-53; 1 Thess. 4.16-18; 2 Thess. 2.1).

### **The first resurrection**

The rapture is viewed as part of the first resurrection. The first resurrection is when every child of God ever lived from Adam until the last trumpet sound shall be changed instantly with spiritual bodies. The partakers of the rapture shall live together with the tribulation saints and reign together with Christ for a thousand years during the millennial age (Rev. 20.4-5).

### **Why the church must be raptured before the great tribulation**

- God's love and grace destroys condemnation and gives eternal life to all who choose to believe in His one and only Son (John 3.16-18).
- God is not sending anyone to hell and destruction; rather people willingly choose to go to hell by rejecting the love and grace of God. If you choose Jesus, you are not condemned while rejection means you have been damned and condemned already (John 3.18-19).
- Jesus Christ paid the price for us which includes the consequences of the great tribulation. We do not need to suffer for a price Christ has paid. The great tribulation is part of God's program to punish iniquity and sinners who did not believe in Christ at the first advent (1 Cor. 6.20).
- The LORD'S compassion will not permit Him to destroy the just together with the wicked (Ps.145.8-9).
- In times of war ambassadors are called back to their homeland. Christians are God's ambassadors and accordingly, we shall be raptured before the great and terrible day of the LORD which is a time for Jacob's trouble (2 Cor. 5.20).
- God never destroys the wicked with the righteous. In the story of Noah and the flood, as soon as Noah and his sons, his wife and his son's wives went in with him; as well as all the beasts as directed by the LORD, the waters came to fulfill the mandate of God (Gen. 7.7-10).
- The same story is told of Lot and his family when divine judgment was looming over the land of Sodom and Gomorrah. Immediately Lot and his family left the city and settled in Zoar, the LORD rained down on Sodom and Gomorrah fire and brimstone from heaven (Gen. 19.23-24).
- The LORD sent Joseph in advance to save his brothers and the innocent from the famine meant to overtake the whole world (Gen.50.20).
- The church must be raptured before the Antichrist can be revealed. The church has the capacity to bind and destroy the works of darkness. The Antichrist could



never have fulfilled his satanic agenda if the church were to be present in the great tribulation (Matt.16.19; 2 Thess. 2.6-8).

## **7 BIBLICAL RAPTURES**

### **1. The rapture of Enoch**

<sup>21</sup> When Enoch had lived sixty-five years, he became the father of Methuselah. <sup>22</sup> Enoch walked with God after the birth of Methuselah three hundred years, and had other sons and daughters. <sup>23</sup> Thus all the days of Enoch were three hundred sixty-five years. <sup>24</sup> Enoch walked with God; then he was no more, because God took him (Gen. 5.21-24).

### **2. The rapture of Elijah**

<sup>8</sup> Then Elijah took his mantle and rolled it up, and struck the water; the water was parted to the one side and to the other, until the two of them crossed on dry ground. <sup>9</sup> When they had crossed, Elijah said to Elisha, "Tell me what I may do for you, before I am taken from you." Elisha said, "Please let me inherit a double share of your spirit." <sup>10</sup> He responded, "You have asked a hard thing; yet, if you see me as I am being taken from you, it will be granted you; if not, it will not." <sup>11</sup> As they continued walking and talking, a chariot of fire and horses of fire separated the two of them, and Elijah ascended in a whirlwind into heaven. <sup>12</sup> Elisha kept watching and crying out, "Father, father! The chariots of Israel and its horsemen!" But when he could no longer see him, he grasped his own clothes and tore them in two pieces (2 Kings 2.8-12).

### **3. The rapture of Jesus Christ**

<sup>9</sup> When he had said this, as they were watching, he was lifted up, and a cloud took him out of their sight. <sup>10</sup> While he was going and they were gazing up toward heaven, suddenly two men in white robes stood by them. <sup>11</sup> They said, "Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking up toward heaven? This Jesus, who has been taken up from you into heaven, will come in the same way as you saw him go into heaven" (Acts 1.9-11).

### **4. Pre-Tribulation rapture**

It deals with the rapture of the church before the beginning of the great tribulation. The redeemed church will be taken to heaven for the marriage supper of the Lamb

and to receive rewards for deed done in the flesh whilst on earth (1 Thess. 4.16-18; Rev. 19.1-10).

### **5. Mid-Tribulation rapture**

It deals with the rapture of the 144,000 Jewish evangelists in the mid section of the great tribulation. They were found standing on Mt. Zion as a people redeemed from the earth together with the Lamb and the Father's name was written on their foreheads. They sang a new song and followed the Lamb wherever he goes (Rev. 14.1-5).

### **6. Close-Tribulation rapture**

This involves the rapture of the tribulation saints at the end of the great tribulation. Many will be slain for the word of God and for the testimony of Jesus Christ. Countless millions which no one could number from all nations, tribes, peoples and tongues stood before the throne of the Lamb with palm branches in their hands. These also came out from the great tribulation and participated in the rapture (Rev. 6.9-11, 7-9-17, 13.7, 14.9-13, 15.1-4, 17.6, 19.1-10, 20.4-5).

### **7. The rapture of the 2 Witnesses**

These two witnesses will be given power by the Lord to prophecy for 1260 days clothed in sackcloth to conclude the tribulation. They will be killed by the beast and their bodies will lie in the great city where the Lord was crucified for three and half days after which they will be resurrected and raptured to heaven (Rev. 11.3-12).

## **7BIBLICAL RESURRECTIONS**

### **1. Old Testament resurrection**

This is a doctrine affirmed by Old Testament Scriptures (Dan.12.1-2). Some individuals in the Old Testament experienced a foretaste of the coming resurrection. Elijah brought the son of the widow of Zarephath back to life (1 Kings 17.17-24). A dead body bounced back to life after contacting the bones of Elisha the man of God (2 Kings 13.21).

### **2. New Testament resurrection**

The resurrection is a fact impossible to overlook in the New Testament. Jesus taught about the dead hearing the voice of the Son of man and those hearing will live (John 5.25-29). Several people experienced the resurrection the day Jesus Christ died on the cross (Matt. 27.50-53). Jesus brought at least 4 people back to life. The apostles notably Peter and Paul brought dead people to life.

### **3. The resurrection of Jesus Christ**

Jesus Christ predicted his death and resurrection. <sup>21</sup> From that time on, Jesus began to show his disciples that he must go to Jerusalem and undergo great suffering at the hands of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and on the third day be raised (Matt. 16.21; 1 Cor. 15.1-8).

### **4. Resurrection of the saved dead**

This is a trustworthy doctrine of the New Testament. <sup>51</sup> Listen, I will tell you a mystery! We will not all die, but we will all be changed, <sup>52</sup> in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet. For the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised imperishable, and we will be changed. <sup>53</sup> For this perishable body must put on imperishability, and this mortal body must put on immortality (1 Cor. 15.51-53).

### **5. Resurrection of the 2 Witnesses**

<sup>11</sup> But after the three and a half days, the breath of life from God entered them, and they stood on their feet, and those who saw them were terrified. <sup>12</sup> Then they heard a loud voice from heaven saying to them, "Come up here!" And they went up to heaven in a cloud while their enemies watched them (Rev. 11.7-11).

### **6. The first resurrection**

This involves all the tribulation saints coming back to life again and reigning with Christ a thousand years. <sup>4</sup> Then I saw thrones, and those seated on them were given authority to judge. I also saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for their testimony to Jesus and for the word of God. They had not worshiped the beast or its image and had not received its mark on their foreheads or their hands. They came to life and reigned with Christ a thousand years. <sup>5</sup> (The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended.) This is the first resurrection. <sup>6</sup> Blessed and holy are those who share in the first resurrection. Over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests of God and of Christ, and they will reign with him a thousand years (Rev. 20.4-6).

## 7. The final resurrection

It involves the resurrection of the rest of the dead after the thousand years. These will appear before Christ at the white throne judgment. <sup>12</sup> And I saw the dead, great and small, standing before the throne, and books were opened. Also another book was opened, the book of life. And the dead were judged according to their works, as recorded in the books. <sup>15</sup> and anyone whose name was not found written in the book of life was thrown into the lake of fire (Rev. 20.12,15).

### EVENTS IN HEAVEN

#### The Church in Heaven for 7 years

- The earth will go through a 7 year period of intense tribulation while the Church or the bride of Christ is in heaven.
- In heaven, all Old Testament and New Testament saints will be rewarded for deeds done in the flesh whether good or bad (Eccl. 12.13-14).
- Heaven will be a place of accountability for all works done in the flesh (Rom. 14.12).
- Heaven will be a place of reward where all saints will give accounts of works done including the reasons for doing certain things we did (2 Cor.5.10).
- We shall be like Christ in heaven because the vine produces branches of its kind and nature (John 15.1-2, 5; 1 Jn. 3.2).
- The works of all the saints will be tested by fire. If one's work passes the test, the person shall be rewarded; if one's work burns, the person shall suffer loss but shall be saved as though through fire (1 Cor. 3.10-15).

#### The Bema Seat

- Bema is a Greek word for reward.
- At the Bema seat of Christ – the saints shall be rewarded and not judged or condemned. There is therefore now no condemnation to those who are in Christ Jesus, who walk not according to the flesh but according to the spirit (Rom. 8.1).
- All shall stand before the judgment seat of Christ which is the reward seat and give an account of deeds done in the body whether good or bad (Rom. 14.10, 12).
- Born again believers shall render accounts of their lives and shall be rewarded according to their deeds at the bema seat of Christ. All six different classes of works performed by Christians will be tested by fire. The work classes are gold,

silver, precious stones, wood, hay and stubble. All whose works stand will receive a reward accordingly, and those whose works fail the fire test will suffer loss (1 Cor. 3.9-15).

- The marriage supper of the Lamb presents a glorious moment for the church. The body of Christ or the church which also is the bride will be reunited to the Head of the Church for the first time in human and divine history at the Bema seat (Rev. 19.1-10)

### **The marriage supper of the Lamb**

- The relationship of Christ to the Church is like husband and wife. It is bound by the eternal arms of unbroken love (Eph. 5.23-25).
- The marriage of the Lamb will comprise saints of all ages. Thus all true believers from righteous Abel to the rapture will receive the mandate to enter heaven for the first time (Rev. 21.2).
- John was carried in the spirit to a great and high mountain where the holy city or the bride of the Lamb also known as the New Jerusalem was revealed unto him. It was descending out of heaven from God with sparkling beauty which defies human description. It is where the redeemed of the Lord will spend eternity with Him (Rev. 21.9-10; Jn. 14.1-3).
- It is a city with foundations, which maker and builder is God. The patriarchs all died in faith not having received the promises but saw it from afar off. The elders declared plainly that they were looking for a better country prepared by God (Heb. 11.10, 13-16).
- The marriage of the Lamb has come and his wife has made herself ready. The bride was given fine linen which represents the righteousness of the saints. Blessed are those who are called to the marriage supper of the Lamb at the bema (Rev. 19.7-9).

### **The 7 Crowns at the Bema**

1. Incorruptible crown for overcomers (1 Cor. 9.24-27).
2. Crown of gold for the 24 elders who are seated round the throne of God (Rev. 4.4).
3. Crown of glory for pastors given by the chief shepherd when he appears (1 Pet. 5.4).
4. Crown of righteousness for those who are faithful to the end (2 Tim. 4.8).

5. Crown of life for Christians who endure temptations and challenges (James 1.12).
6. Crown of life for overcomers who remain faithful to the end (Rev. 2.10).
7. Unguarded crowns for workers who work extra hard (Rev. 3.11).

### **7 General Rewards at the Bema**

1. Soul winners' rewards will be given to those who turn many to righteousness. They shall shine like the firmament and the stars forever (Dan. 12.3).
2. Rewards for serving God's messengers. It starts from giving a cup of cold water to a servant of Christ (Matt. 10.42).
3. Rewards earmarked for faithful servants of Christ (Matt. 25.23, 34, 41).
4. Benevolent rewards. These are rewards set aside for those who do good to their enemies (Lk. 6.35, 19.24)
5. Sowers and reapers rewards (Jn. 4.36; 1 Cor. 3.8).
6. Inheritance rewards for serving Christ (Col. 3.24).
7. Rewards for suffering endured (Mt. 5.11-12; Rom. 8.17; 2 Tim. 2.12).

### **21 blessings to the overcomer at the Bema**

1. He shall eat the tree of life in the middle of God's Paradise (Rev. 2.7)
2. He shall be given the crown of life (Rev. 2.10, 3.11)
3. He shall escape the second death which is the lake of fire (Rev. 2.11, 20.14)
4. He will eat the hidden manna (Rev. 2.17)
5. He will be given a white stone with a new name written on it (Rev. 2.17)
6. He will be part of the rapture (1 Thess. 4.16)
7. He shall possess an incorruptible and immortal body (1 Cor. 15.51-53)
8. He will have dominion over death (1 Cor. 15.54)
9. His vile body shall be changed (Phil. 3.21)
10. He shall appear with Christ in glory (Col. 3.4)
11. He holds on to what he has in order to get the crown of glory (Rev. 2.25, 3.11)
12. He will be given power over the nations (Rev. 2.26-27)
13. He will be given the morning star (Rev. 2.28)
14. He will walk with Christ in white (Rev. 3.4-5)
15. His name shall eternally be written in the book of life (Rev. 3.5)
16. His name shall be confessed before the Father and the angels (Rev. 3.5)
17. He shall be a pillar in the temple of God (Rev. 3.12)

18. God's name shall be written upon him (Rev. 3.12)
19. The name of the New Jerusalem shall be written upon him (Rev. 3.12)
20. The new name of Christ shall be written upon him (Rev. 3.12)
21. He will sit with Christ in his throne (Rev. 3.21)

#### **14 Purposes of the Rapture**

1. Jesus is preparing heaven for the saints of all past, present and future ages (Jn. 14.1-3).
2. To separate and resurrect the righteous dead from the wicked dead (1 Thess. 4.13-17).
3. To take the saints to heaven to partake in the marriage supper of the Lamb and to receive rewards (2 Cor. 5.10; Rev. 19.1-11).
4. For immortality to take over mortality, and the incorruptible to take on corruptible (Phil. 3.21; 1 Cor. 15.35-58).
5. To allow the Antichrist to be revealed and to effect the great tribulation (2 Thess. 2.1-8).
6. To usher the saints into the reality of heaven called the blessed hope (Titus 2.13).
7. To make the saints like Christ (1 Jn. 3.2).
8. To make the saints perfect in body, soul and spirit (Phil. 3.21; 1 Thess. 5.23).
9. To preserve the saints from the consequences of the great tribulation (2 Thess. 2.1-3).
10. To present the church to Christ (Eph. 5.27).
11. To prove skeptics and scoffers wrong about the promise of his second coming (2 Pet. 3.3-4).
12. To cause the saints to escape the great tribulation as indicated in Rev. 6-19; 1 Thess. 5.9; Luke 21.36).
13. To end the church age and to fulfill the prophetic agenda of God (Matt. 25.1-13).
14. To remove the hinderer of the lawless one (2 Thess. 2.7).

#### **10 Requirements of the Rapture**

1. Belonging to Christ (1 Cor. 15.23; Gal 5.24).

2. Leading a complete life of holiness (Rev. 20.4; Heb. 12.14).
3. Being a member of the Body of Christ (1 Thess.4.14-16; 2 Cor. 5.17-18).
4. Bearing the fruit of the Spirit (Gal. 5.22-23).
5. Being watchful to the end (Luke 21.36).
6. Investing your spiritual gifts (Matt. 25.14-30).
7. Purity of heart and mind (1 John 3.2-3; Matt. 5.8).
8. Being blameless in the day of our LORD Jesus Christ (1 Cor. 1.8).
9. Living and walking in the Spirit (Gal. 5.16-18; Rom. 8.14-16).
10. Being a child of God and walking in the light (Rom. 8.16; John 1.12; 1 John 1.7).

## EVENTS ON EARTH

---

### **The 7year great tribulation**

The earth will go through an intense period of great tribulation while the church which is the bride of Christ enjoys serenity and bliss with the LORD in heaven for 7 years.

### **The 7year great tribulation period is described as:**

1. Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week which equals 7 years. The 7 years is divided into three and half years equally where Daniel 9.27 and Revelation chapters 6-19 are literally fulfilled. The Antichrist shall sign a covenant with many for one week which is 7 years. But in the middle of the one week, thus after the first three and half years he will break the covenant and cause an end to sacrifice, offerings and oblations. He will destroy Jerusalem and establish the abomination that causes desolation which is his idol on the wing of the temple to be worshipped. The Antichrist will destroy all who refuse to worship the idol through war till the end.
2. The outer court of the temple which the Gentiles will tread under foot for 42 months. Worship of the one true God will cease and the Gentiles will pay homage to the Antichrist in the temple for the 42 month period indicated. (Rev. 11.2-3, 12.6, 13.5).
3. The day of the LORD (Zeph. 1.7).
4. The day of calamity and the day of the LORD'S visitation (Jer. 46.21).
5. The day of wrath. For the great day of His wrath is come; and who shall be able to stand? (Rev. 6.17).
6. A time of trouble. And there shall be time of trouble such as never was since there was a nation. But God shall eventually deliver Israel including those having their names written in the book of life (Dan. 12.1).



7. The hour of temptation. Because you have kept the word of my patience, I also will keep you from the hour of temptation, which shall come upon the entire world, to try them that dwell upon the earth (Rev. 3.10).
8. A time of Jacob's troubles. Alas! For the day is great, so that none is like it; it is even a time of Jacob's trouble; but he shall be delivered out of it (Jer. 30.7).
9. A time of fulfilling the conditions in Matthew 24.4-8.
10. A time of meeting the conditions of God's wrath as described in Matthew 24.9-14 during the first half of the tribulation.
11. A time of meeting the conditions as described in Matthew 24.15-26 during the second half of the tribulation.
12. The situation whereby all the events of the second coming as described in Matthew 24.27-51 will literally be fulfilled

### **THE REVELATION OF THE ANTICHRIST**

- The rapture of the church will set the stage for the coming Antichrist.
- The revelation of the Antichrist begins the 7year great tribulation period on earth according 2 Thessalonians 2.1-9.
- The events are covered in Revelation chapters 6 -19 where the church is not mentioned. The church was raptured and seen in heaven in Revelation 4-5, and resurfaced in Revelation 19 at the marriage supper of the Lamb.

### **WHO IS THE ANTICHRIST?**

The Antichrist in person is to be distinguished from the "many antichrists" in 1 John 2.18, and the spirit of the antichrist 1 John 4.3. The "many antichrists" including the beast from the earth known as the false prophet prepares the way for the Antichrist, who is the beast from the sea (Rev. 13.1, 11-14; 16.13).

He is the adversary of Christ, against Christ and represents him in a deceptive manner. The Antichrist will seemingly provide for the needs of the people but deny them ultimate salvation.

In the past, many scholars have identified the Pope as the Antichrist. Many Protestant reformers including Martin Luther, John Calvin, Thomas Cranmer, John Knox and several others identified the Roman Papacy as the Antichrist.

Some also rejected the established church teaching that looked to the future for an Antichrist to rise up, and taught that the Antichrist is a present spiritual force that will be with us until the end of the age under different religious disguises from time to time.

Some modern scholars also think the Antichrist is a metaphor for an ongoing battle between good and evil within us. Other scholars believe that the Antichrist could have been a metaphor for the Roman Emperor Nero, and other Roman Emperors who severely persecuted Christians or even Christian heretics. However, we shall establish as follows some biblical basis for the Antichrist:

### **IN THE BOOK OF REVELATION**

1. He is the beast from the sea having seven heads and ten horns with ten crowns on each horn (Rev. 13.1).
2. He will be backed by the power and authority of the dragon and will sit on the throne of Satan (Rev. 13.2).
3. Many will worship the dragon and the beast saying, who is like the beast? Who is able to make war with him? (Rev. 13.4).
4. He is the one given authority and a mouth to blaspheme the name of God, His tabernacle and those who dwell in heaven for forty two months (Rev. 13.5).
5. He has authority over every tribe, tongue and nation (Rev. 13.7).
6. He is the one who makes war with the saints and overcomes them (Rev. 13.7)
7. He is the rider of the white horse who went forth conquering and to conquer (Rev. 6.1-2).

### **IN THE BOOK OF ISAIAH**

1. The Spoiler (Isa. 16.4-5).
2. The Assyrian (Isa. 10.5-12).
3. The king of Babylon (Isa. 14.4).

### **IN THE BOOK OF DANIEL**

1. He is the little horn (Dan. 7.8).
2. He is the prince that shall come (Dan. 9.26).
3. He is the king of fierce countenance (Dan. 8.23).
4. He will sign a peaceful treaty with many for 7 years (Dan. 9.27).

5. He will break his 7 year peace treaty with Israel after the first three and half years of the great tribulation (Dan. 9.27).
6. He is the vile person (Dan. 11.21).
7. He is the willful king (Dan. 11.36)
8. He is the king of the north (Dan. 11.36-45).

### **IN THE EPISTLES**

1. He is the falling away, the man of sin and the son perdition (2 Thess. 2.3).
2. He is the one who opposes and exalts himself above God (2 Thess. 2.4).
3. He will sit in the temple of God and show himself as God desiring to be worshipped (2 Thess. 2.4).
4. The Antichrist is presently being restrained by the church (2 Thess. 2.6-7).
5. He is the lawless one who will be revealed after the rapture of the church (2 Thess. 2.8).
6. The Antichrist will be backed by satanic power, signs and lying wonders (2 Thess. 2.9).
7. He will deceive many who did not receive the truth (2 Thess. 2.10-11).

### **THE ANTICHRIST AND MID-TRIBULATION EVENTS**

- The Antichrist will sign a 7year peaceful pact with many including Israel before the tribulation begins.
- The Antichrist will break his peace treaty with Israel in the middle of the 7 years tribulation period (Dan. 9.27).
- He will set up the abomination that causes desolation in the temple (Dan. 9.27; Matt. 24.14).
- He will demand universal worship. Consider the “5 I wills” of Satan, who gives power and authority to the Antichrist (Isa. 14.13-14); Rev. 13.1-2).

### **THE DIABOLICAL TRINITY OF SATAN WHICH INCLUDES**

- The Antichrist
- The False Prophet
- Satan

**THE ANTICHRIST WILL POSSESS:**

- Religious Power
- Military Power
- Political and Economic Power

**THE 7YEAR REIGN OF THE ANTICHRIST****HIS PERSONALITY**

- He represents the civil head of the one world government.
- He is the second person of Satan's diabolical trinity.
- He is the beast from the sea (Rev. 13.1).
- He is the beast with 10 horns and 7 heads (Rev. 13.1).
- The 10 horns and 7 heads may represent the G8 nations and/or the EU countries.
- He shall be a homosexual and drug magnate.

**HIS RELIGIOUS POWER**

He will command worldwide worship by those whose names are not in the Lamb's Book of Life. Both the dragon (Satan) and the beast (Antichrist) shall be worshipped by unbelievers. He will blaspheme the holy name of the LORD Almighty and will draw attention of the world to himself. He will have a false prophet who will be his forerunner just like John the Baptist became the forerunner of Christ. The Antichrist imitates the original Christ of the Gospels. His secretary general in the person of the false prophet will force and coerce the world to worship the beast. The false prophet will be given power to work lying miracles and will compel many into the kingdom of the Antichrist to worship him (Rev. 13.4, 8, 12; 2 Thess. 2.4).

**HIS POLITICAL AND ECONOMIC POWER**

- He will be the head of the new world order or the one world government.
- The world economy will be under his control. Organizations such as the International Monetary Fund (I.M.F.) and World Bank will be under his auspices.
- No one will be able to buy or sell without the mark of the Antichrist (Rev. 13.17).
- He will control the 10nation kingdom of the revived Roman Empire (EU, G8?).

- The mark and name of the Beast which will gain governmental and economic control is 666 (Rev. 13.18).

### **HIS MILITARY POWER**

- The devil will give his power and authority to the Antichrist. This will cause him to blaspheme God thinking he is equal with the LORD Almighty in power (Rev. 13.6).
- He will make war against the saints and to overcome them (Rev. 13.7)
- His army marches to Armageddon (Rev. 19.19)

### **THE COMING FALSE PROPHET**

1. He is the third person of Satan's trinity.
2. He is the beast from the earth (Rev. 13.11).
3. He has two horns like a lamb pretending to be like Christ but is a dragon inside (Rev. 13.11).
4. He is the right hand man of the Antichrist and will demand worship to the Antichrist (Rev. 13.12).
5. He performs great signs and lying wonders (Rev. 13.13).
6. He will convince people to make an image for the Beast and worship the Image (Rev. 13.14).

### **THE COMING IMAGE OF THE BEAST**

1. He will be used by the diabolical trinity of Satan.
2. The Image of the Beast will have his source of power from the False Prophet (Rev. 13.15).
3. The Image will have breath to speak like man.
4. He will cause many who will not worship him [Image of the Beast to be killed] (Rev. 13.15).
5. He will introduce the mark of the Antichrist which is 666 (Rev. 13.15).
6. The Image will cause all, small and great, rich and poor to receive the mark on their right hand or forehead (Rev. 13.15).

## THE MARK OF THE BEAST

Also, it causes all, both small and great, both rich and poor, both free and slave, to be marked on the right hand or on the forehead, so that no one can buy or sell unless he has the mark, that is, the name of the beast or the number of its name (Rev. 13.16-17).

### NERO

Most Bible scholars believe that 666 refer to the Roman Emperor Nero. According to a passage in the *Annals* by Tacitus, Nero was responsible for some especially vicious attacks on Christians in Rome, after he had burned Rome and accused Christians of the crime. The Book of Revelation was written after Nero committed suicide, but many people thought that he had not died and had come out of hiding in the East to lead this new wave of persecution against Christians in the late first century. The Greek spelling, "Nerōn Kaisar," (Nero Caesar) transliterates into Hebrew Adds up to yield 666.

### DOMITIAN

The German theologian, Stauffer concluded that the "beast" can in general only refer to a Roman emperor and argued that this Emperor must be Domitian, because he had reigned during the proposed time of origin of the Book of Revelation. Domitian was supposedly called in Greek as A.KAI.DOMET.SEB.GE or "The Beast" as a "secret derisive nickname" by the Romans, Greek, Christians and Jews – as which totals 666 in Greek.

### PAPACY

Some Protestant Bible commentators have equated the "beast" of Revelation chapter 13 with the Papacy. To this end, the letters of an alleged title of the Pope, *Vicarius Filie Dei* (Vicar of The Son of God), are summed to total 666 in Roman numerals.

## ECONOMIC, POLITICAL AND SPIRITUAL INFLUENCE OF THE MARK

Several futurist Christians basically hold the view that the rise of a supranational currency could be a hallmark of the End Times. Under this view, the prophetic statements in Revelation 13:16-17 are taken to imply that the one way in which the Antichrist will obtain and implement power over the Earth during the period of the great tribulation is through totalitarian control of said supranational currency. This power would be acquired by the Antichrist code named "the Beast". He performs miracles and subsequently requires all people to receive the Mark of the Beast – 666 in their right hands or foreheads in order to buy or sell. Life then will be much more difficult for those who oppose the mark and refuse to worship the beast.

## **VARIOUS INTERPRETATIONS OF THE MARK OF THE BEAST**

Some scholars interpret the mark as a requirement for socio-economic and political survival. It means that the mark might actually be an object with the function of a credit card or national identity card. Others have proposed that the mark of the beast may refer to a social security number or card. It is also supposed to be a microchip or a tattooed barcode on the human body (Rev. 20.4).

- The mark of the beast is the same as the name of the beast or the number of his name (Rev. 13.17).
- People everywhere will be compelled to receive the mark of the beast (Rev. 13.16).
- Without the mark it will be much more difficult to transact any business, obtain any gainful employment, go to hospital or travel (Rev. 13.17).
- It takes wisdom and understanding to know the mark of the beast – it is the counting of a man – 666 (Rev. 13.18).
- Whoever receives the mark shall drink the wine of the wrath of God and be tormented with fire and brimstone forever (Rev. 14.9-11).
- Noisome and grievous sores shall torment those with the mark of the beast (Rev. 16.2).
- The mark shall be used by the Antichrist and the false prophet as a weapon of deception to lure many into the lake of fire (Rev. 19.2).
- All who receive the mark worship the Antichrist and their names are not found written in the Lamb's Book of Life (Rev. 13.8).
- Non-receivers shall part-take in the first resurrection and reign with Christ for a thousand years (Rev. 20.4-6).
- Non-receivers are overcomers of the Antichrist and shall stand on the sea of glass mingled with fire having the harps of God in their hands (Rev. 15.2).
- Non-receivers of the mark have their names written in the Lamb's Book of Life before the foundation of the world (Rev. 13.8).

## **THE GREAT TRIBULATION**

The great tribulation is a time when God will pour 21 judgments of His wrath on the world coupled with the wrath of the Antichrist, false prophet and the image of the beast.

## **THE THREE DIFFERENT JUDGMENTS ARE:**

- The 7 Seal Judgments
- The 7 Trumpet Judgments
- The 7 Bowl Judgments

## THE 7 SEALS

*The 7 seals were opened by the Lamb*

1. The 1<sup>st</sup> seal revealed the white horse signifying the coming of the Antichrist (Rev. 6.1-2).
2. The 2<sup>nd</sup> seal revealed the red horse signifying another world war probably the coming 3<sup>rd</sup> world war just after rapture; when Israel is at peace (Rev. 6.3-4; Ezek. 38.8,11,14, 39.9).
3. The 3<sup>rd</sup> seal revealed the black horse signifying inflation and economic crisis (Rev. 6.5-6).
4. The 4<sup>th</sup> seal revealed the pale horse signifying 25% of the world's population will die through starvation, business and job crisis (Rev. 6.7-8).
5. The 5<sup>th</sup> seal revealed the souls of the martyrs and their resurrection (Rev. 6.9-11).
6. The 6<sup>th</sup> seal revealed the day of God's wrath associated with all natural calamities and warfare (Rev. 6.12-17; Zeph. 1.1-14).
7. The 7<sup>th</sup> seal describes the prayers of the saints and ushered the 7 angels ready to sound the 7 trumpet judgments (Rev. 8.1-6).

## THE 7 TRUMPETS

*The 7 angels prepared themselves to sound the trumpets (Rev. 8.6).*

1. The 1<sup>st</sup> angel sounded his trumpet and a third of vegetation (trees and green grass destroyed (Rev. 8.7).
2. The 2<sup>nd</sup> angel sounded his trumpet and a third of the sea turned into blood and a third of the mammals killed (Rev. 8.8-9).
3. The 3<sup>rd</sup> angel sounded his trumpet and a third of the rivers became poisoned (Rev. 8.10-11).
4. The 4<sup>th</sup> angel sounded his trumpet and a third of the solar system destroyed (Rev. 8.12-13).
5. The 5<sup>th</sup> angel sounded his trumpet and locusts from the bottomless pit came out to torment those without the seal of God. Men will seek death but will not find it (Rev. 9.1-6, 11-12).
6. The 6<sup>th</sup> angel sounded his trumpet and the angels in charge of the 3<sup>rd</sup> world war were released. A third of humanity will be killed by the war (Rev. 9.13-21).



7. The 7<sup>th</sup> angel sounded his trumpet which gave the kingdoms of the earth to the Lord Jesus and revealed the Ark of the Covenant in the temple of God in heaven (Rev. 11.15-19).

### **THE 7 BOWLS OF GOD'S WRATH**

1. The 1<sup>st</sup> produced foul and loathsome sores (Rev. 16.1-2).
2. The 2<sup>nd</sup> bowl turned the sea into blood killing its entire animal (Rev. 16.3).
3. The 3<sup>rd</sup> bowl turned the rivers into blood (Rev. 16.4-7).
4. The 4<sup>th</sup> bowl affected the ozone layer causing excessive heat (Rev. 16.8-9).
5. The 5<sup>th</sup> bowl brought darkness to the kingdom of the Antichrist (Rev. 16.10-11).
6. The 6<sup>th</sup> bowl dried the Euphrates and paved way for the armies of the East and the Antichrist to enter Israel (Rev. 16.12-16).
7. The 7<sup>th</sup> bowl completes the tribulation: "it is done". Babylon will be punished by God and men will blaspheme the name of God (Rev. 16.17-21).

### **THE MID-TRIBULATION PREACHING**

#### **PREACHERS WILL INVADE THE EARTH**

God has a special preaching program lined up to frustrate the activities of the devil and his diabolical trinity during the great tribulation. Angels including human beings will be involved in getting the Gospel preached to the ends of the earth to save the lost (Matt. 24.14).

#### **A MIGHTY ANGEL WILL PREACH THAT TIME IS NO MORE (REV. 10.1-6)**

<sup>5</sup> Then the angel whom I saw standing on the sea and the land raised his right hand to heaven <sup>6</sup>and swore by him who lives forever and ever, who created heaven and what is in it, the earth and what is in it, and the sea and what is in it: "There will be no more time".

#### **THE PROPHECY AND MINISTRY OF THE 2 WITNESSES – ENOCH AND ELIJAH (REV. 11.1-14)**

<sup>4</sup> These are the two olive trees and the two lamp stands that stand before the Lord of the earth. <sup>7</sup> When they have finished their testimony, the beast that comes up from the bottomless pit will make war on them and conquer them and kill them.

### **THE 144,000 JEWISH EVANGELISTS WILL PREACH (REV. 14.1-5, 7.1-5)**

Then I looked, and there was the Lamb, standing on Mount Zion! And with him were one hundred forty-four thousand who had his name and his Father's name written on their foreheads.<sup>4</sup> It is these who have not defiled themselves with women, for they are virgins; these follow the Lamb wherever he goes. They have been redeemed from humankind as first fruits for God and the Lamb,<sup>5</sup> and in their mouth no lie was found; they are blameless (Rev. 14.1.4-5).

### **A MIGHTY ANGEL WILL PREACH THE EVERLASTING GOSPEL (REV. 14.6-7)**

<sup>6</sup> Then I saw another angel flying in mid-heaven, with an eternal gospel to proclaim to those who live on the earth—to every nation and tribe and language and people.

### **THE SECOND ANGEL PREACHES ABOUT THE FALL OF BABYLON (REV. 14.8)**

Babylon in those days will represent the capital city of the Antichrist. It is from this city that all devices against the world shall originate.

<sup>8</sup> Then another angel, a second, followed, saying, "Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great! She has made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication."

### **THE THIRD ANGEL PREACHES AGAINST THE MARK OF THE BEAST (REV. 14.9-11)**

<sup>9</sup> Then another angel, a third, followed them, crying with a loud voice, "Those who worship the beast and its image, and receive a mark on their foreheads or on their hands,<sup>10</sup> they will also drink the wine of God's wrath, poured unmixed into the cup of his anger, and they will be tormented with fire and sulfur in the presence of the holy angels and in the presence of the Lamb.<sup>11</sup> And the smoke of their torment goes up forever and ever. There is no rest day or night for those who worship the beast and its image and for anyone who receives the mark of its name."

### **THE GOSPEL WILL BE PREACHED TO EVERY NATION BEFORE THE END COMES (MATT. 24.14)**

<sup>14</sup> And this gospel of the kingdom will be proclaimed throughout the world, as a testimony to all the nations; and then the end will come.

### **GOD WILL SEND FAMINE OF HIS WORD UPON THE EARTH (AMOS 8.11-13)**

<sup>11</sup> The time is surely coming, says the Lord GOD, when I will send a famine on the land; not a famine of bread, or a thirst for water, but of hearing the words of the LORD.<sup>12</sup> They shall wander from sea to sea, and from north to east; they shall run to and fro, seeking the word of the LORD, but they shall not find it.<sup>13</sup> In that day the beautiful young women and the young men shall faint for thirst.

## THE MINISTRY OF THE 2 WITNESSES

- Theologians read several meanings into the identity of the two witnesses found in Revelation 11.3-14. It has been proposed by some to be two literal individuals in the person of Moses and Elijah or Enoch and Elijah.
- They may appear in the future on the apocalyptic scene alongside the Antichrist. Some read symbolic meanings into it thinking they represent the Old Testament and the New Testament; Law and the Prophets; Gentiles and Jews representing Christ in Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week; Mercy and Grace.
- Other proposed identities include the witnessing church because Jesus sent the disciples two by two. Other views perceive it is the existence of the Gentile Church and Israel through the tribulation period of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week. Some theologians also view the two olive trees and the two lamp stands as a symbol of peace and light during the great tribulation.
- The purpose and goal of the two witnesses is destined to decry the reign of the Antichrist and to attest against the capital City – Babylon the Great.

## THEIR ACTIVITIES

- God's power is given to them to prophecy for 1,260 days or 42 months equivalent in the second half of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week (Rev. 11.3).
- They are 2 olive trees and lamp stands before God (Rev. 11.4).
- They have power to harm human beings and nature (Rev. 11.4-6).
- The Eastern Orthodox Church teaches that the Two Witnesses will be Enoch and Elijah (the two individuals who entered bodily into heaven), who will be sent back to earth to preach during the Great Tribulation, and they will be the last martyrs according to Hebrews 9.27 before the Second Coming.
- The Western Church teaches that the Two Witnesses will be Moses and Elijah representing the Law and the Prophets as affirmed on the mount of transfiguration. Elijah ultimately came to die in the person of John the Baptist (Matt. 17.1-13).
- The death and resurrection of the 2 witnesses after three and half days will take place to fulfill the biblical mandate according to Hebrews 9.27 (Rev. 11.7-11).
- The rapture of the 2 witnesses will take place at the close of the tribulation after fulfilling their divine destiny and mandate (Rev. 11.12-14).

## THE FALL OF BABYLON THE GREAT

### IDENTITY

- Several Bible scholars including Roman Catholics and Protestants agree that Babylon is the symbolic name for Rome. In 1 Peter 5.13, some speculate that “Babylon” is used to refer to Rome. This is enhanced by Revelation 17.9 that she sits on seven mountains. Other translations use seven hills which could be the Seven Hills of Rome.
- "Rome" would therefore be the 'new Babylon' and all of the symbolism characterizing Babylon as a wanton "whore," would be transferable to Rome, according to this view.
- There are a number of smaller symbolic clues that some see as suggesting a link between Rome and Babylon — the military occupation of Israel by the Roman Empire, the repression of the Jewish nation and religion, the destruction of Jerusalem in 70 AD and 135 AD, and the worldwide persecution of Christians by the Roman Empire, would lend meaning to the imagery of the whore, drunk with the blood of martyrs, as a violent and bloodthirsty entity.
- Babylon the Great has religious, commercial and political undertones. The Bible states that the political elements of the world committed fornication with her (Rev. 17.1-2). It indicates signs of unholy alliances.
- The woman in Revelation with the name “Babylon the Great” written on her forehead as a "harlot" sitting on “crowds and nations” is viewed as a metaphor since no literal woman could do this (Rev. 17:1, 5, 15).
- It is believed that the Whore of Babylon symbolizes the world empire of false religion which the Antichrist will use to command universal worship (Rev. 18.3, 9-10, 15-17). Among John’s visions recorded in the book of Revelation appear pronouncements of judgment against “Babylon the Great,” as well as a description of her downfall.
- At Revelation 17:18, the same figurative woman is described as “the great city that has a kingdom over the kings of the earth.” Since this is a great city with control over the nations of the earth, it is believed to symbolize an influential organization that must be international in scope possibly the revived Roman Empire under the EU.
- They believe the religious identity of Babylon the Great is further confirmed by the statements in Revelation that she misleads all the nations by means of her witchcraft; and that she is “a dwelling place of demons.” (Rev. 18:2-3; Deut. 18:10-12).
- The harlot is also described as persecuting “prophets” and “holy ones” and murdering “the witnesses of Jesus”. (Rev. 17:6; 18:24) Hence, it is believed that

this woman named Babylon the Great represents a world empire comprising all religions they deem as being in opposition to the LORD God.

## **THE TRIBULATION SAINTS**

### **GREAT MULTITUDES BEFORE THE ALTAR HOLDING PALM BRANCHES (REV. 7.9-17)**

During the great tribulation countless millions from every tribe and nation will be saved.

<sup>9</sup> After this I looked, and there was a great multitude that no one could count, from every nation, from all tribes and peoples and languages, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, robed in white, with palm branches in their hands. <sup>10</sup> They cried out in a loud voice, saying, "Salvation belongs to our God who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb!".

### **TRIBULATION SAINTS UNDER THE ALTAR WEARING WHITE ROBES (REV. 6.9-11)**

<sup>9</sup> When he opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of those who had been slaughtered for the word of God and for the testimony they had given; <sup>10</sup> they cried out with a loud voice, "Sovereign Lord, holy and true, how long will it be before you judge and avenge our blood on the inhabitants of the earth?" <sup>11</sup> They were each given a white robe and told to rest a little longer, until the number would be complete both of their fellow servants and of their brothers and sisters, who were soon to be killed as they themselves had been killed.

### **ANTICHRIST TO MAKE WAR WITH THE TRIBULATION SAINTS (REV. 13.7)**

<sup>7</sup> Also it was allowed to make war on the saints and to conquer them. It was given authority over every tribe and people and language and nation.

### **TRIBULATION SAINTS WITH WORKS FOLLOWING THEM (REV. 14.9-13)**

<sup>13</sup> And I heard a voice from heaven saying, "Write this: Blessed are the dead who from now on die in the Lord." "Yes," says the Spirit, "they will rest from their labors, for their deeds follow them."

### **TRIBULATIONS SAINTS HAVING HARPS OF GOD STOOD ON THE SEA OF GLASS (REV. 15.1-4)**

<sup>2</sup> And I saw what appeared to be a sea of glass mixed with fire, and those who had conquered the beast and its image and the number of its name, standing beside the sea of glass with harps of God in their hands.

### **TRIBULATION SAINTS WHO ARE MARTYRS OF JESUS CHRIST (REV. 17.6)**

<sup>6</sup> And I saw that the woman was drunk with the blood of the saints and the blood of the witnesses to Jesus. When I saw her, I was greatly amazed.

### **THE MARRIAGE SUPPER OF THE LAMB (REV.19.1-10)**

Then I heard what seemed to be the voice of a great multitude, like the sound of many waters and like the sound of mighty thunder peals, crying out, "Hallelujah! For the Lord our God the Almighty reigns. <sup>7</sup>Let us rejoice and exult and give him the glory, for the marriage of the Lamb has come, and his bride has made herself ready; <sup>8</sup>to her it has been granted to be clothed with fine linen, bright and pure"— for the fine linen is the righteous deeds of the saints. <sup>9</sup> And the angel said to me, "Write this: Blessed are those who are invited to the marriage supper of the Lamb." And he said to me, "These are true words of God".

### **TRIBULATION SAINTS AND THE FIRST RESURRECTION (REV.20.4-5)**

<sup>4</sup> Then I saw thrones, and those seated on them were given authority to judge. I also saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for their testimony to Jesus and for the word of God. They had not worshiped the beast or its image and had not received its mark on their foreheads or their hands. They came to life and reigned with Christ a thousand years. <sup>5</sup> (The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended.) This is the first resurrection. <sup>6</sup> Blessed and holy are those who share in the first resurrection. Over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests of God and of Christ, and they will reign with him a thousand years.

### **THE BATTLE OF ARMAGEDDON**

- Armageddon comes from the Hebrew word *Har-Megiddo* which means mountain of Megiddo or a place surrounded by mountains. The word Armageddon appears once in the Hebrew New Testament. Megiddo was the location of many decisive battles in ancient times.
- The town Megiddo is approximately 25 miles west of the southern tip of the Sea of Galilee. The battle of Armageddon which is described as the mother of all battles will be fought in Megiddo.
- At Armageddon, God will decisively deal with the Antichrist, the kings of the earth and the whole earth (Rev. 16.14). According to the prophet Ezekiel, the battle will escalate and potentially cover the whole land of Israel and the entire earth (Ezek. 38.9-16). It will be God's war that will end all wars. The battle will take place at the time of the end which is Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week.
- The Scriptures declare in the book of Revelation that the kings of the entire inhabited earth will be gathered together to the war of the great day of God the

Almighty (Rev. 16.14). The prophetic account then adds: “And they gathered them together to the place that is called in Hebrew Har–Magedon,” or Armageddon (Rev. 16.16).

- Moreover, Revelation explains that “the kings of the earth and their armies” will be “gathered together to wage the war with the one seated on the horse and with his army” (Rev. 19.19).
- This horseman is identified as none other than Jesus Christ — 1 Tim. 6:14-15; Rev. 19:11, 12, 16. Jesus Christ who rides on this white horse is different from the Antichrist who rides on similar white horse in Revelation 6.2. It is the strategy of the devil to seek to imitate Christ in order to deceive the innocent.

### **THE OUTCOME OF ARMAGEDDON**

- Why Armageddon? What are we to conclude from the verses stated above? That Armageddon is a war between Jesus Christ and the forces of evil and mankind led by the Antichrist who receives power and authority from the dragon.
- Why would the Father and his Son, Jesus Christ, fight such a war? For one thing, Armageddon will bring judgment and destruction to those destroying the earth (Rev. 11:18).
- The second coming of Christ will terminate the battle of Armageddon. Christ will kill the loyal forces of the Antichrist with the sword that proceeded from his mouth. The Antichrist and his chief lieutenant who is the false prophet and who worked signs in his presence will be cast into the lake of fire (Rev. 19.19-21).
- The turbulent events preceding the second coming of Christ especially the prophecies in Matthew 24 to 25; and Revelation 6 to 19 will completely change the face of the earth; renovate the natural order and prepare the stage for the millennial age. It is the 1000year reign of Christ with the saints on earth.
- The devil will be bound and kept in the bottomless pit for a thousand years during the millennial kingdom (Rev. 20.1-3). According to his promise, it will be a new heaven and a new earth with peaceful programs where righteousness dwells (2 Pet. 3.13). There shall be no more wars again until the thousand years are over.
- At Armageddon, Jesus Christ will descend as the Prince of Peace to wage war against injustice and unrighteousness (Is. 9.6; Ps. 45.4, 7). Similarly, the Scriptures describe God’s reaction to the injustice that he sees in the world today. “The LORD has seen this, and he is displeased that there is no justice,” writes the prophet Isaiah.
- “He will wear justice like a coat of armor and saving power like a helmet. He will clothe himself with the strong desire to set things right and to punish and avenge the wrongs that people suffer” (Is. 59:15, 17).
- Armageddon will see the complete eradication of corruption and injustice, a canker several governments and world organizations find it impossible to deal with.

Actually, God does not take delight in destroying the wicked (Gen. 18.25; Ezek. 18.32; 2 Pet. 3.9).

- However, according to His prophetic program, God will use Armageddon as the last resort to establish everlasting righteousness on earth.

### **THE PARTICIPANTS OF ARMAGEDDON**

- It will involve the Antichrist with those who did not take the mark of the beast or worship his image (Rev. 13.7-8).
- Israel will be the target of the antichrist at the battle of Armageddon (Zech. 14.2).
- It will be a battle of unprecedented blood bath which may involve the European Union nations which is a revival of the Old Roman Empire, the NATO Powers and the Group of Eight Industrialized States (Rev. 14.20).
- Christ will stop the battle of Armageddon on the first day of his 2<sup>nd</sup> coming when he steps on the Mount of Olives (Zech. 14.3-5).
- Christ will defeat the Antichrist at the battle of Armageddon. He will throw both the Antichrist and the False Prophet into the lake of fire where they will be tormented forever and ever (Rev. 19.11-21).
- Not all nations are involved. Some will not come against Jerusalem in the battle of Armageddon. Several people will choose to serve the LORD after the war (Zech. 14.16-19).
- The LORD shall be king over all the earth after the battle of Armageddon and never again shall the nations learn war (Zech. 14.9; Isa. 2.4).



### **THE ISLAMIC ANTICHRIST**

- Jesus warns about four horses with the first white, second red, third black and fourth pale green.
- There was spiritual war in Rev. 6:1-8.
- And in Rev. 17:14 they will wage war against the Lamb, but the Lamb will overcome them. In Rev. 5:1-5, John saw a scroll with seven seals. No one other than Jesus the Son of God can open its scrolls.

### **THE WHITE HORSE (REV. 6:1-2)**

- The first rider on the white horse was Mohammad. He was given a bow burnt on conquering.
- The second was Abu Bakr on the red horse, and the third was Umar on the black horse and the fourth Uthman on the pale green horse. These horse men will have powers over a quarter of the world's population. It happened. Words of Jesus John 12:44-46.

### **THE BIBLE AND THE KORAN HAS OPPOSITE FACTS**

- The Bible says Jesus is the Son of God; but the Koran says Jesus is not God but a prophet.
  - The Bible says Jesus was crucified and rose to life on the third day, the Koran says this did not happen.
  - The Bible says Jesus is the only way to eternity, the Koran says this is not true. It is not possible for both the Bible and the Koran be true. One is true and the other is false.
  - The Koran says Mohammad was taken on a white horse to the temple mount in Jerusalem. The Dome of the Rock precisely mark the exact spot where Mohammad was taken to by the angel.
  - This fits Revelation's description of the rider of the white horse to be Mohammad. The outer court of the temple was excluded from being measured because it was given to the Gentiles (Rev. 11:1-2).
  - The Dome of the Rock makes many false statements confirming Daniel's message of the abomination that causes desolation.
  - The four horses created the Umayyad Islamic Caliphate covered 6 million square miles covering 62 million people representing a quarter of the then world's population.
1. Mohammad 570 AD-632 AD
  2. ABU Bakr 632 AD-634 AD
  3. Umar 634 AD-644 AD
  4. Uthman 644 AD-656 AD

### **SECOND HORSE WAS ABU BAKR (REV. 6:3-4)**

- Abu Bakr was the rider of the second red horse. Abu Bakr Caliphate crushed the Iranian rebellion. He lasted for only two years. He conquered the Persian Empire and the Byzantine Roman Empire.

### **UMAR THE RIDER OF THE BLACK HORSE (REV. 6:5-6)**

- Umar the rider of the black horse followed Abu Bakr. Umar was the king in Daniel chapter 11. He imposed a huge tax system. He collected enough taxes to the tune \$38 Trillion in today's currency.

### **UTHMAN IS THE RIDER OF THE PALE GREEN HORSE (REV. 6:7-8)**

- In Uthman's time, Islam was divided in to Shiite and Sunni.
- The Bible prophecy colors for the four horse men is Red, Black, White and Green represent all Islamic countries flag today.
- In the book of Revelation, the Bible warns 8 times not to take the mark of the beast or his image. The mark is the Shahada and the image is the Kaaba black stone (Rev. 14:11-12).
- The Shahada gives the Islamic doctrine Tawheed. Tawheed means there is no God but Allah and Mohammad is His prophet. Tawheed denies both Jesus as the Son of God and the Holy Spirit.

### **THE KAABA**

- The Kaaba contains the black stone worship image that was placed there by Mohammad. It's the worship of a false god with worshippers facing the East.
- Muslims don't know their destiny and Mohammad was not sure of where he was going after his death Koran 46:9. The false prophet and the beast will have their share in the lake of fire (Rev. 19:20).
- The 4 leaders of Islam mark of the beast which is the Shahada and the image is the Kaaba. This prophecy was given hundreds of years before Islam came into existence.

### **THE ISLAMIC MAHDI**

#### **THE TWELFTH IMAM, THE ISLAMIC MESSIAH, THE ISLAMIC ANTICHRIST OR ANTICHRIST OF THE BIBLE**

- He is coming to destroy all infidels – Jews, Christians and Muslims who don't believe in Islam.
- The twelfth Imam is believed by Shia Muslims that he is the Islamic Messiah and he is coming in the later days or end of times. The Iranians believe that when he

comes, either Israel or the United States might have been destroyed, and he will come and finish the rest of the infidels. He will come and set up an Islamic One-World Government.

- The two Iranian leaders all confirm to have met the Twelve Imam. They claim the Twelve Imam is a combination is a person and a spirit. President Ahmadinejad of Iran refers to him as the Promised One.
- He will be devout Muslim and a descendant of Mohammad. He will conquer Babylon and rule from there. He will be the Muslim version of Jesus and enforcer of Sharia Law.
- He will come in the clothes of peace but will turn the world into a bloody war. He will go out and unite the Muslim world for a one world government. He will lead military action against all those who oppose him.
- He will visit many countries and make a 7year peace treaty with the State of Israel. He is the Bible Antichrist. He will attack Israel but can't conquer it. He will set up his kingdom in Jerusalem, ruling for 7years.
- Christians will not see the reign of the Antichrist. He will rule for seven years under one world government which is underway in the United Nations, and one world currency, and a one world religion, one world order,
- His mark will be 666 without which no one can buy or sell. All the technology to these are available now. It will be implanted on the arm or the forehead. He will set up his image in Israel for all to worship it. Those who refuse are killed.
- He will be wounded but will recover quickly, trying to emulate the death and resurrection of Jesus Christ. He will pursue Israel to the Jordan, but he will news from the East which will disturb him. That is 200 million Chinese army and will return to fight them.
- Ezekiel 36 and 37 had already come to pass. Thus, the regathering of the Jews, making the desert bloom, the resurrection of Israel and many more. If Ezekiel 36 and 37 have come to pass, it's possible for Ezekiel 38 and 39 to come to pass in our life time.
- It is the Gog and Magog prophecy. The Scripture says this day is coming. It's imminent or inevitable. The rest of the Middle East is growing in unity against Israel and America seems to be losing support to Israel.
- Lutherans agree with Catholic church. They are now one. Muslims Catholic mass in Italy, Spain, France to show solidarity. All these are one step towards one world religion or church. A new inter-faith and spiritual gathering of Muslims Jews, and Christians will take place in Jerusalem in September. It just passed from 4-23 Sept. this brought the coming together of the three major world religions.
- The Pope and Hillsong will unite together in 2016 in Washington DC. Pope visited Sri Lanka for the World-Wide peace (WARP) summit.

- The LGBT Community has adopted the rain bow symbol as their flag emulating Gen. 9:6

NB: The Antichrist is behind the world of Occult, the New Age Movement, Illuminati, One World Economy and Government (Globalist world)

### **THE NEW WORLD ORDER**

- The New World Order is a new world government. It's one person taking over the government of the whole world. Is there any history in the world whereby someone has attempted started one world government.

### **NIMROD STARTED A ONE WORLD SYSTEM**

- In the Bible, Nimrod (Gen. 10:10; Gen. 11:1).
- The first kingdom of the New World Order that we find in the Babylon (Babel). They organized together and attempted to build a tower to the heaven, and kick God out and make a name for themselves. God disapproved that and ended their project in total confusion.
- What is the goal of the new World Order? They want to kick God out just like Nimrod and the people of his day wanted to do. They want nothing to do with God. they want man to become his own God.

### **PHARAOH WAS THE NEXT**

- Pharaoh was the next king to start another New World Order. He wanted a global dominance and made friends with God's chosen people, the Jews (Exodus 1:8-14).
- A new king arose who knew not Joseph. He enslaved the Jews and made their lives bitter. That's the essence of the New World Order. It will make peoples life uncomfortable and painful.
- According to Exodus 1:14, Pharaoh ordered that all males be killed and females live. He was trying to keep the Jewish population down so he can gain total control. The same thing is practiced by today's New World Order.
- In the book of Daniel, God showed Nebuchadnezzar the future kingdoms of the world in Dan. 4. It all focused on world domination and the kingdoms which will come and rule the world one after the other.
- Dan. 7:1, 5, 6,
- God gave a vision to Daniel about people who will try to take over the world. It shall be awful. It was domination. The kingdom received dominion, and it was dreadful times.

- Like Nimrod a mighty hunter killed people and did not recognize God.
- In Daniel chapter 8 talks about Alexander the Great of Greece. He went out to conquer and conquer. The next kingdom was
- John 8 talks about the government of Rome. They were afraid the Romans will come and take over their place.
- Jesus is against world domination.
  
- The true New World order starts from Europe. The United States kicked God out of its system. But in Europe, Alexander claimed he was “God” and so was Caesar, and they demanded worship. It’s one person taking over the whole world.
  
- The physical New World Order which the United Nations is trying to build a one world government. Today, the devil is behind the United Nations to influence governments and world leaders to pass and implement policies which will repress certain religions and countries.
- He is using politics, religion and the banking system to create a New World Order.
  
- The Beast known as the Antichrist will run the One World Government which is the new World Order. Once again, the beast speaks blasphemies against God. as a Christian, you can’t serve the God of creation and the false god.
- Rev. 17:1+
- Rev. 16:12
- There are demonic spirits working in the world today to bring about the New World Order, and to establish the satanic kingdom through one world religion, one world government and one world currency.

### **THE TRIBULATION**

- The tribulation is when God gives Satan to rule the world for a few years. Rev. 13 claims how the devil through the beast to deceive people through the mark of the beast which is 666. It’s all about repressive system and killing people.
- There is a reason why God allows this to happen: Zeph. 3:8; Zech. 12:2
- God is going to let them assemble, and He will crush them one day. The UN is an assembly.
- According to the Bible, all the world will come against Jerusalem. And that’s when God comes back to destroy the enemy. And God will sit (Zech. 12:9-10) and reign in Jerusalem (Zech. 14:2, 15)
- God will come through the Eastern Gate of Jerusalem and destroy every one of them. And God will be in control.

- What about the banking system (Zech. 14:14) all that the bankers worked for shall be destroyed in one basket; Jesus shall smite the nations (the New World Order); the beast and the false prophet shall be cast alive into the lake of fire (Rev. 19:11+).
- The right God, Jesus Christ shall one day return, and destroy the New World Order, and he will reign forever.
  
- The only way to fight the New World Order is to get saved and be raptured. To avoid the mark, trust Jesus. If you are not raptured, then understand that the Antichrist would put people under force to accept the mark.
  
- Illuminati is behind the new world order. You might have riches, fame, power but will not last forever. That is what the illuminati is about. The all-seeing eye of Satan is what they worship but their day will surely come.
  
- Isaiah 45:22 Eventually, God will reign over the whole world as one God. the devil will place a false god in the temple of Jerusalem, but it will not stand. The New World Order was prophesied thousands of years that it will take place, but the actors don't know about it, and neither think about it. Don't be part of it. Else you bow to Satan and the beast and that will be your end.
  
- Which side are you going to be, the winning side with Jesus or the losing side with the Antichrist? Believe in Christ and be part of the rapture and be saved. With the New World Order, you'll have the money and the fame, but think about the destiny of your eternal soul.
  
- God says, look unto me and be ye saved, all ye ends of the earth. Are you going to be part of God's kingdom.
  
- The new world order is where the United Nations will use its peace keeping missions' soldiers to control the world. President Obama and the British Premier called for New World Order to tackle global economic crises. US secretary of States, Henry Kissinger supported New World Order.
  
- The New World Order is defined as Luciferian. On the United States Dollar bill is an Illuminati seal or mark set up in 1776. The all-seeing eye of Satan. The all-seeing eye is an eye in a triangle, an Egyptian pyramid. The New World Order is written on under the all-seeing eye Nuvus Ordo Seclorum (New World Order). The all-seeing eye is embossed on the back of the American Dollar and inside it is the all-seeing eye.

- What is an Egyptian pyramid doing on the back of United States Dollar? What is the link? It's none at all except the field of the occult. The entire United States currency is put under the power of the occult. The god of free masonry will lead the world into this particular direction. It will lead the whole world into one world government, one world religion and one world law system, and one world money system which the Bible calls "The mark of the beast."

### **CURRENT TRANSLATIONS OF CERTAIN BIBLES**

- The New World Order is transition from the old order to the new order. The English Bible renders 2Cor. 5:17 as "The old order is gone, and a new order has come"
- In Heb. 9:10, "Time of reformation" is replaced by "New order" in the NIV.
- Donald Trump called the New World Order "The New American Future."

### **THE ANTICHRIST REVEALED**

- The prince shall come according to the book of Daniel.
- Hamas, Hezbollah and Iran all joining attacks against Israel. The United Nations may intervene led by one man called the Antichrist who is on the scene in the world today.
- The prince shall come Dan. 9:26+ the people shall destroy the temple of the sanctuary. Rome attacked Israel and took all the temple treasures to Rome.
- Dan. 11:19+
- There shall come a raiser of taxes. This identifies the Antichrist and the next verse indicates that he shall obtain the kingdom by flatteries. Israel will not give him a recognition, but he will come. He shall be destroyed in few days neither in battle. This raiser of taxes could be Pope Benedict. Then the main man will come which is the Antichrist who shall obtain the kingdom by deceptions of flatteries.
- Pope Benedict was that raiser of taxes. Antiochus also applies here. But when Jesus prophesied about the abomination that causes desolation means it was a future event.
- Dan. 11:22+
- Pope Francis shall come with flatteries even called Prime Minister Netanyahu to come to Rome. He will do what his fathers never did. Shimon Perez paved way for Pope Benedict
- No pope had ever released the Temple treasures (the Menorah) but this Pope did. The Pope has two keys on the Vatican flag. They control both political power and religious power.

- He is going to stare the king of the South which probably is Israel with a great army. Israel will be scared because of the size of the army. This may be the battle involving ISIS, Hezbollah, Hamas, Syria on the border and Iran with Israel. All these trying to wipe out Israel.



## ISRAEL REVIVED AND THE MAGOG AND GOG WAR

In Ezek. 37 to 38

- The Baltic sea conflict is happening now. Israel born as a nation in the 20<sup>th</sup> century is a miracle. The Russian military now controls the northern part of Israel. Russia military controls the border. Russia also has more control of the skies in northern border. The Russian S300 air defense system. They can now control all of Northern Israel due to modern weapons.
- Russia delivery to Syria these modern defenses to attack Israel. It's an integrated air defense system. Providing additional intelligence to crush Israeli aggression.
- Gog and Magog war will start after Russia has joined forces with Turkey, Iran, Syria and all the Arabic allies as the prince of Rush to attack Israel in Ezekiel 38. They will attack Israel through the north but the Lord God will meet them with great earth quake, fire, landslides and other natural disasters to repel the attack on Israel. The destruction would be horrific and complete that Israel will take 7 years to clean it up with fires.
- In Ezek. 39, God will send fire to all the Gog and Magog countries as punishment for attacking Israel. The after mouth of the Gog and Magog war could trigger the beginning of world wide peace process which could be the beginning of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week prophecy. The peace treaty led by the Antichrist with Israel.
- And Dan. 9 foretold a milestone prophecy concerning Israel. It will be between the Messiah and the Antichrist which would be divided into three segments. The last segment which is the 70<sup>th</sup> week will concern the Prince who is to come and the defeat of the Antichrist by the Prince in the last 7 years.
- In 1Thess. 5, where peace saying peace, peace which is the result of the defeat of Russia and its allies in Northern Israel through divine intervention, there on shall the Antichrist be revealed. It will through the European Union by means of physical and spiritual backing, would fill the void in the Middle East through the leadership of the Antichrist.
- The Antichrist as head of the revived EU would facilitate a peaceful agreement with Israel and the Middle East. This comes as a result of Gog and Magog defeat in the middle East.

- The first three and half years comes with peace. While Israel is building the 3<sup>rd</sup> Temple in Jerusalem. Thus, at the mid-point of the 7 years, the Antichrist will break the peace agreement, turned down laws, and will go to the temple, and declare himself to be God, thus committing the abomination that causes desolation.
- At this point what Jesus Christ foretold as the great tribulation begins. It's God's wrath upon the Antichrist and the world. The Antichrist would also make war and kill many Jews and those who don't believe in him. These are all signs of coming fulfilment that the end is near. Especially the God and Magog war, which comes first or could be the precursor paving the way for the Antichrist of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week.
- The prophecy foretold about the regathering of the Jews thousands of years ago, and it's happening now. The prophecy foretold thousands of years ago, of Russia and her allies amassing troops at the Northern part of Israel, and it's happening right now.
- Jesus explained in Luke 21, that to escape the wrath to come, you have to be born again according to John 3. The signs of the prophecies will be very swift, and there will be no more time and delay. It's time to examine yourself and make sure your salvation is secured is now.
- As a sign of His coming and the end of the age, Jesus declares you will rumors of wars (Matt. 24:6-7). Isaiah 17:1, 9, 14 prophecies doom of Damascus. Iran would be covered with sandstorm and her nuclear facility would be destroyed by earthquake. These passages suggest Damascus would be destroyed in a single night. And verse says Israel would attack Damascus with a single missile and bring it down.

Modern day nations which shall march up against Israel according to Ezek. 39:1-9.

- Russia – land of Magog
- Iran – Persia
- Turkey – Meshach and Tubal, Gomer
- Libya – Put
- Ethiopia – Cush
- Sudan – Cush

## DANGEROUS ALLIANCE

- Russia, Turkey and Iran are forming a dangerous alliance at the door step of Israel in recent times. But their alliance would be destroyed by God (Ezek. 38:18-23; Ezek. 39:2, 7-8; Zech. 2:8-9).
- Jesus rebuked the Pharisees for failing to understand the signs of the times (Matt. 16:1-3). If the religious leaders of the day of Jesus could not understand the signs of the times, then this generation has to be equally careful.

Jesus warns of His coming. It's a hidden event (Mark 13:35-37).

- There is going to be a world war (world war three)
- According to Matt. 24; Rev. 6; Ezek. 38-39; Zech. 14;
- Jesus judges and makes war in righteousness (Rev. 19).
- Great tribulation Matt. 24:21-22

Clear signs – look at the presidential debate of the United States

Three clear signs

- The Muslim migration – ISIS AND Terrorist – the worry is nuclear bomb
- The lid on Iran (Zech. 5)
- The Russia challenge

**NB:**

**President Putin of Russia – Aredeemed.com**

According President Putin, Pope Francis Is Not A man of God

## POPE FRANCIS – THE 113<sup>TH</sup> POPE

- “Pope Francis is using his platform to push a dangerous far-left political ideology on vulnerable people around the world, people who trust him because of his position,” Putin said.
- “If you look at what he (the Pope) says it's clear that he is not a man of God. At least not the Christian God. Not the God of the Bible,” Putin said at the Naval Cathedral of St. Nicholas in Kronstadt.
- “He dreams of a world government and a global communist system of repression.
- “As we have seen before in communist states, this system is not compatible with Christianity.”
- The pope has become increasingly brazen this year in pushing the globalist agenda and far-left talking points upon the masses. Earlier this year he called for a global central bank and financial authority, and more recently he said *“Americans need to be ruled by a world government as soon as possible for their own good.”*

- Pope Francis's idea that Americans would be better off under a world government doesn't stop there. The radical leftist pontiff also went on record stating that Europe should become one country under one government.
- He is also on record calling for a China-style one child policy for Western nations, as well as telling a congregation in Rome that having a personal relationship with Jesus is "*dangerous and harmful.*"
- While Putin is a practicing Christian, he is not a Roman Catholic, and the pope is not his leader. According to his recent statements, President Putin does not even consider Pope Francis to be Christian.
- The Russian president is rarely openly critical of foreign leaders, instead preferring to use diplomacy to win people over to his side. However notorious globalists including George Soros, Jacob Rothschild and Bill Gates have received tongue lashings before, and now Pope Francis has joined their company.

Paul Simeon 2014

March 29, 2018

**Pope Francis allegedly abolishes Hell a day before Good Friday, says "souls of unrepentant sinners simply disappear."**

Here are excerpts from this article: "Pope Francis: "They are not punished, those who repent obtain the forgiveness of God and enter the rank of souls who contemplate him, but those who do not repent and cannot therefore be forgiven disappear. There is no hell; there is the disappearance of sinful souls."

**THE GREAT APOSTASY**

1Tim. 4:1+

1 Now the Spirit expressly says that in latter times some will depart from the faith, giving heed to deceiving spirits and doctrines of demons, 2 speaking lies in hypocrisy, having their own conscience seared with a hot iron, 3 forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from foods which God created to be received with thanksgiving by those who believe and know the truth. 4 For every creature of God is good, and nothing is to be refused if it is received with thanksgiving; 5 for it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer.

Rev. 20:11-12 I saw a great white throne, and him who sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away. There was found no place for them. I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, and they opened books. Another book was opened,

which is the book of life. The dead were judged out of the things which were written in the books, according to their works.

Rev. 20:13-14 The sea gave up the dead who were in it. Death and Hades gave up the dead who were in them. They were judged, each one according to his works. Death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death, the lake of fire.

## **WAS POPE EMERITUS BENEDICT XVI FORCED TO RESIGN?**

### **Veritas-vincit.org**

- Almost five years since his momentous resignation from the papacy on February 11, 2013 for health reasons, the undeniable fact is that Pope Emeritus Benedict XVI remains in the peak of health and in full control of his faculties. He has also chosen to remain in the Vatican. He has also chosen to retain the title of “pope”, as Pope Emeritus Benedict XVI.
- In his last general assembly on February 27, 2013, 2 weeks after announcing his intent to resign, Benedict XVI said that the petrine ministry is “always” and “forever”:
- *He who assumes the Petrine ministry no longer has any privacy. He belongs always and totally to everyone, to the whole Church. His life is, so to speak, totally deprived of the private sphere. [...] The “always” is also a “forever”—there is no returning to private life. My decision to forgo the exercise of active ministry, does not revoke this. I do not return to private life, to a life of travel, meetings, receptions, conferences and so on. I do not abandon the cross, but remain in a new way near to the Crucified Lord.*
- And we have to ask: Why did Benedict XVI resign in the first place, if the petrine ministry “is forever”? Was his resignation out of his own full volition and will? Was it valid in the first place?
- New revelations have come to light which give us more information on the circumstances surrounding Benedict’s mysterious resignation.

## **LEAKED EMAILS SHOW POLITICAL PLOT TO OUST BENEDICT**

- A group of Catholic leaders cite new evidence uncovered in emails released by WikiLeaks that the conservative Pope Benedict did not actually resign on his own initiative, but was pushed out of the Vatican by a coup that the group of researchers are calling the “Catholic Spring.”

- The group of Catholic leaders includes Christopher A. Ferrara, President of The American Catholic Lawyers Association, Michael J. Matt, Editor of The Remnant, David L. Sonnier, LTC US ARMY (Retired), Chris Jackson of Catholics4Trump.com, and Elizabeth Yore, Founder of YoreChildren.
- Last January 20, 2017, the group wrote and published a letter to U.S. President Donald Trump, formally requesting him to launch an official investigation into the activities of the billionaire liberal leftist George Soros, Barack Obama, Hillary Clinton (and others) who they allege were involved in orchestrating the Catholic Spring that resulted in their goal of “regime change” in the Vatican.
- The group included with the letter evidence from various sources to support their claim, including WikiLeaks emails. WikiLeaks is an international non-profit organization that publishes secret information, news leaks, and classified media provided by anonymous sources. Its website, initiated in 2006 by Julian Assange, has a database of 10 million documents in 10 years since its launch

### **SOROS, OBAMA AND CLINTON BEHIND BENEDICT XVI RESIGNATION?**

- The leaked emails show that Soros, Obama and Clinton used the United States’ diplomatic machinery, political muscle, and financial power to coerce, bribe and blackmail “regime change” in the Roman Catholic Church in order to replace Benedict XVI with Pope Francis: who has since become an unlikely mouthpiece for the international left, stunning Catholics around the world.
- “We have reason to believe that a Vatican ‘regime change’ was engineered by the Obama administration,” say the petitioners, in their January 20 letter to President Trump. “We were alarmed to discover,” their letter notes, “that, during the third year of the first term of the Obama administration your previous opponent, Secretary of State Hillary Clinton, and other government officials with whom she associated proposed a Catholic ‘revolution’ in which the final demise of what was left of the Catholic Church in America would be realized.”

### **THE LAST POPE? REVISITING THE PROPHECY OF ST. MALACHY**

- Are we living in the times of the last pope in Church history?
- Archbishop Ganswin, papal secretary to both Pope Emeritus Benedict XVI and Pope Francis, has dramatically brought the Church’s attention back to an ancient

prophecy that predicts that Benedict XVI will be the second-to-the-last pope prior to the return of Jesus Christ.

- In an interview last May 20, 2016, on the occasion of the launch of a book about Benedict XVI's papacy written by Fr. Roberto Regoli, Archbishop Ganswin called attention to the "prophecy of the popes" attributed to St. Malachy, and said that prophecy is a "wake-up call".
- St. Malachy, an Irish Catholic bishop, was known as a gifted prophet, even predicting the date of his own death in 1148. The first native-born Irishman to be canonized, he is known in the Roman Catholic Church for his work as a healer, a miracle worker, and as a reformer of the Church in Ireland. He was canonized in 1190 by Pope Clement III.
- Malachy was visiting Rome in 1139 when he went into a trance and received a vision. He wrote down this extraordinary vision in which he claims to have foreseen all of the popes from the death of Innocent II until the destruction of the church and the return of Christ. He named exactly 112 popes from that time until the end.
- Number 111 on the list, the "Glory of the Olive", is Benedict XVI because the Benedictines have a branch called the Olivetans. Pope Benedict XVI was not a Benedictine priest, yet he chose the name of Benedict, founder of the Order of Saint Benedict.
- The symbol of the Benedictine order includes an olive branch. The prophecy, therefore, foretells that Benedict XVI is the second to the last pope prior to the Second Coming of Jesus Christ.
- "Indeed, when looking at the prophecy, and considering how there was always a sound reference to popes mentioned in its history – that gives me the shivers," Archbishop Ganswein said. Although Catholics aren't required to accept the prophecy, "speaking from historical experience, one has to say: Yes, it is a wake-up call."
- First published in 1595 by Arnold de Wyon, a Benedictine monk, Malachy's prophecy consists of 112 short Latin descriptions of future popes. Each of these descriptions identifies one outstanding trait for each of these future popes, beginning with Pope Celestine II, who was elected in 1130. This list stretches all the way from the time of St. Malachy to the present, describing, among many

others, Pope John Paul II, Benedict XVI, and finally, “Peter the Roman”, the last pope prior to the Second Coming of Jesus Christ.

### THE FINAL ENTRY: THE LAST POPE

The final of the 112 Latin entries of the prophecy reads as follows: In the final persecution of the Holy Roman Church, there will sit Peter the Roman, who will pasture his sheep in many tribulations, and when these things are finished, the city of seven hills [Rome] will be destroyed, and the dreadful judge will judge his people. The End.

- There are three important points to note with regard to this final entry, which concerns the “last pope” in Church history:
- First, **it foretells the “final persecution of the Holy Roman Church”**. Many Church events today bear witness to this reality that indeed, the Holy Roman Church is severely being persecuted, both by outside forces, as well as by “wolves in sheep’s clothing” that are within the Church herself. Prior to the Second Coming of Jesus Christ, there will be many “tribulations” that the Church and the faithful will have to bear.
- Second, **the city of the seven hills (Rome) will be destroyed**. The prophecy foretells the coming destruction of Rome.
- Third, **“Peter the Roman” will be the final pope**. Some reputable prophecies have pointed out that in the end times, there will reign a “false pope” who will create a false church.
- Blessed Anne Catherine Emmerich, one of the greatest mystics of all time, saw a vision of the end times, where she saw the “baleful relationship between two popes”, and how the false church grew and size.
- The Church-approved apparitions of Our Lady of Lasallette likewise predicted: “Rome will lose the faith and become the seat of the Antichrist”. Fr. Stefano Gobbi, founder of the Marian Movement of Priests and Laity, likewise received interior locutions from Our Lady, predicting that the false pope in the end would commit the “horrible abomination”, which would consist in the abolition of the Eucharist and the forming of a false, one-world ecumenical Church. The messages given to Fr. Gobbi have received the nihil obstat and imprimatur; millions of faithful, and thousands of clergy, are part of the Marian Movement of Priests.



- If there will be a false pope in the end times, as predicted by numerous reputable mystics and Marian apparitions, who then is “Peter the Roman”? While many have interpreted “Peter the Roman” to refer to Pope Francis, there is a weight of evidence, covered by this publication, which seems to indicate that Pope Francis is leading the Church in a vastly different direction from his predecessors.
- In the messages of Jesus given to Maria Divine Mercy, Jesus explains that “Peter the Roman” is St. Peter himself, who will pasture the Church directly from the Heavens during the final persecution of the Catholic Church by the enemies that have taken their seat at the highest echelons of the Church hierarchy.
- The prophecy of St. Malachy is, in the words of Archbishop Ganswein, a “wake up call for us.” We are all called, in these perilous times – the times of the last pope – to become true soldiers of Jesus Christ, fighting to proclaim the full truth of the Catholic Faith against all error, and praying and imploring Our Lord: “Maranatha!”, come Lord Jesus!

### **MASONIC (FREE MASON) HAND SIGNS EXPOSED**

- As we have discussed in our previous article (“Grand Lodge of Masons Buy Full Page Ad to Welcome Pope Francis”), Christianity and Freemasonry are incompatible. Various popes have condemned this secretive occult organization, and for good reason. Many of its members (in the lower ranks) are simply not aware of the true purpose of the organization. At its highest levels, however, Freemasonry is devil worship. Pope Leo XIII called it “the synagogue of Satan”.
- Freemasonry is a Satanic religion in disguise. The Popes knew the real nature of freemasonry. Aside from the numerous testimonies from former masons, one of the more accurate sources was the seizure by Pope Gregory XVI of documents from the masonic lodge known as “*Alta Vendita*”. The documents were later on published in a book and disseminated through various lectures.
- The “*Alta Vendita*” documents chillingly summarizes a plan to infiltrate and destroy the Catholic Church from within:

## **COMMON MASONIC HAND (FREE MASON) SIGNS**

- Freemasons use various hand signals to show their allegiance to Satan, and to signal to their fellow freemasons their membership in the occult organization. These hand signals are usually flashed in public by various world leaders and celebrities, while the unsuspecting masses remain ignorant. Like various Illuminati symbols, only Illuminati/freemasonry insiders are aware of the true meanings hidden behind the signs and hand gestures.
- In this article, we discuss two of the most common hand signals of freemasonry: The devil's horn, and the hidden hand.

### **MASONIC HAND SIGN: THE DEVIL'S HORN**

- The "devil's horn" signal signifies that Satan rules. Remember that Satan is called the "Horned God", and the hand signal is formed so as to resemble horns.
- It is a universal hand signal used by politicians, celebrities as well as heavy metal bands, affirming their allegiance to satanic powers and a visual shorthand for "Hail, Satan." The devil's hand has been observed and photographed around the world, used by George Bush, Bill Clinton, Silvio Berlusconi, Elizabeth Taylor, Prince William, Paul McCartney, Metallica, Ozzie, Avril Lavigne, Stephen Dorff, Dave Navarro and many others.
- This hand symbol is known by several names: Devil's Triad, Il Cornuto, Cornuto, the Horn, Horned Devil, Twin-horned Salute, Horned Hand, Devil Salute, and Devil Horn Salute. The Devil's triad is a recognition sign among Satanists and witches.

### **CONTEMPORARY LEADERS AND CELEBRITIES USING THE DEVIL'S HORN SIGNAL**

- Below are just a few of the more popular contemporary leaders who have publicly used the devil's horn hand signal:
  - President George Bush flashing the devil's horn hand signal
  - President Barack Obama flashing the devil's horn hand signal.
  - George Washington, Karl Max, Joseph Stalin, Napoleon, Baron von Knigge, Friedrich Nietzsche, Frederic Bartholdi

### **MASONIC HAND SIGN: THE HIDDEN HAND**

- Another popular masonic hand sign is the "hidden hand". The paintings and pictures of the great men of the past centuries reveal a common thread which links

them together. Is it a coincidence that many of them hid one of their hands when posing for a portrait? It seems unlikely. We'll look at the Masonic *origin of the "hidden hand"* and the powerful men who used the sign in famous portraits.

- Most of the people using this sign are proven (and often enthusiastic) members of the Freemasons. Considering the great importance of this gesture in Masonic rituals and the fact that all of the elite were either part of Freemasonry or knew of it, it is simply impossible that the recurrence of this sign could be the result of a coincidence.
- The "hidden hand" can, in fact, be found in the rituals of the Royal Arch Degree of Freemasonry and the world leaders that use this sign are subtly saying to other initiates of the order: *"This is what I'm part of, this is what I believe in and this is what I'm working for"*.
- This hand gesture is said to be inspired by Exodus 4:6. In this biblical verse, the heart ("bosom") stands for what we are, the hand for what we do. It can thus be interpreted as: **What we are is what we ultimately do.**
- The symbolic significance of this gesture might explain the reason why it is so widely used by famous Masons. The hidden hand lets the other initiates know that the individual depicted is part of this secret Brotherhood and that his actions were inspired by the Masonic philosophy and beliefs.
- Furthermore, the hand that executes the actions is hidden behind cloth, which can symbolically refer to covert nature of the Mason's actions. Some of the more notorious leaders in history with their portraits showing the "hidden hand" signal include Joseph Stalin, Napoleon Bonaparte, Karl Marx.
- Napoleon Bonaparte was a known mason. Five of the six members of Napoleon's Grand Council of the Empire were Freemasons. Karl Max is the founder of modern Communism. Marx is said to have been a 32<sup>nd</sup> degree Grand Orient Freemason
- Stalin's reign of terror in the Soviet Union lead to the deaths of millions of his own countrymen. He is often shown in pictures using the hidden hand gesture. No official records have been found that prove Stalin's initiation into Masonry. The hiding of his hand, however, provides an initiate's clue to his possible allegiance to an occult brotherhood.
- Then Cardinal Bergoglio (now Pope Francis) with the hidden hand symbol while riding the bus in Argentina. During his inauguration as pope, as he walked out of

the balcony of St. Peter for the first time as pope, he likewise briefly flashed the hidden hand.

- Pope Francis and Cardinal Tagle of Manila, flashing the horned hand signal during the pope's recent visit to Manila, Philippines.
- Pope Francis has flashed the "hidden hand" masonic sign several times in public during the course of his papacy.
- Barry Soetoro belongs to the Subud cult. Barry's real father is Mohammed Subud. The Obama character is a completely made up character to trick the world. Barry was hand-picked by the evil Bushes to continue their agenda.
- Bush Cheney et al with descendants and followers of Bush's real grandfather, Aleister Crowley, staged and executed 911 as a ritual to Isis to give birth to Horus (the Antichrist) and as a mega ritual to Barbara Bush and Ann Cappelletti's father, Aleister Crowley.
- Cappelletti brothers (Bush cousins) got the demolition job of the WTC towers from the U.S. Luciferian cabal.
- Daniel: He will not regard the desire of women" which desire of women is to bring forth children to which he brings in cunningly devised policies against REPRODUCTION through Sodom & it's agendas directly standing against the basic order of the Family, through the likes of Obama's thinking to change times & laws, in the order of the 666, unto his change, change, change of all changes to Sodom.
- Preached the horribly left leaning (against the words of Joshua to Israel of old" Neither to the left nor to the right but by the word of God) Pope;s "close" Bishop Sorondo "" Family planning or contraception in order for a woman to "Implement her desires"" totally twists around the said prophecy of Daniel.
- Freemasonry (the god of Napoleon) & Theosophy (the goddess of Hitler) coupled together to form the "Lamb Like" horns of the 2nd. beast of revelations, reveals the Prophecy of Zechariah 5, the first & 2nd, part resp. also the Biblical False Prophet, with the Church being dangerously led into it. Incidentally it was Russia that finally defeated Napoleon/Hitler sunk in Freemasonry/Theosophy to see the West/America today sunk in the same, in their hatred towards Russia, & it is Spiritual.

## PROPHECIES CONCERNING APOSTASY WITHIN THE CHURCH

- After the Second Vatican Council, Pope Paul VI remarked that the smoke of Satan was seeping into the Church through cracks in the wall. On October 13, 1977, he said: *“The darkness of Satan has entered and spread throughout the Catholic Church even to its summit. Apostasy, the loss of the faith, is spreading throughout the world and into the highest levels within the Church.”*
- Numerous reputable prophecies and apparitions of both Our Lord and Our Lady throughout the years have precisely predicted this great Apostasy, or loss of the true faith, in the Church – brought about principally by the diabolical infiltration of freemasonry into Church ranks.
- In the Church-approved Marian apparition of Our Lady of Good Success at Quito, Ecuador in 1634, Our Lady warned Venerable Mother Mariana de Jesus Torres that in the late 19th Century and throughout most of the 20th Century, the Church would yield to a great heresy. The Sacrament of Matrimony *“will be attacked and profaned,”* and *“Masonry, which will then be in power, will enact iniquitous laws with the objective of doing away with this Sacrament, making it easy for everyone to live in sin, encouraging the procreation of illegitimate children born without the blessing of the Church.”*
- Our Lady also warned that *“...the secular [diocesan] Clergy will leave much to be desired because priests will become careless in their sacred duties ... Lacking a Prelate and Father to guide them with paternal love, gentleness, strength, wisdom and prudence, many priests will lose their spirit, placing their souls in great danger.”*
- Blessed Anne Catherine Emmerich, the stigmatist and mystic who was given various visions of the life of the Blessed Virgin and the Lord Jesus, was another visionary who prophesied about a future time when a “secret sect” will relentlessly undermine the Church:
- *I saw the secret sect relentlessly undermining the great Church. Near them I saw a horrible beast coming up from the sea. All over the world, good and devout people, especially the clergy, were harassed, oppressed, and put into prison...I saw many churches closed down, great miseries everywhere, wars and bloodshed...But it did not last long...*

- Blessed Emmerich likewise saw the special relationship between “two popes” during the End Times, or the period just prior to the Second Coming of Jesus:
- “I saw also the relationship between the two popes. . . I saw how baleful (harmful) would be the consequences of this false church. I saw it increase in size; heretics of every kind came into the city (of Rome). The local clergy grew lukewarm, and I saw a great darkness...”
- In the Church-approved apparitions of Our Lady of Akita, Our Lady warns of this attack on the Church from within:
- The work of the devil will infiltrate even into the Church in such a way that one will see cardinals opposing cardinals, and bishops against other bishops. The priests who venerate me will be scored and opposed by their Confreres. The Church and altars will be vandalized. The Church will be full of those who accept compromises and the demon will press many priests and consecrated souls to leave the service of the Lord. The demon will rage especially against souls consecrated to God.
- Some contemporary prophecies and apparitions have also warned us of the emergence of the “false prophet” of the book of revelation just prior to the Second Coming of Jesus Christ. The “false prophet” will take over the Catholic Church and lead it into widespread error.

**Chief Exorcist Father Amorth: Padre Pio said that the third secret of Fatima was about the False Church in the End Times**

By Maike Hickson, [www.onepeterfive.com](http://www.onepeterfive.com)

- According to Fr. Amorth, Padre Pio said that the Third Secret pertained to the infiltration of the Vatican by Satan and the rise of a “false church” – details that are not found in the Vatican’s official publication of the Third Secret in 2000. Below we publish details of the interview with Fr. Amorth:
- Zavala then asked about the Third Secret: “Forgive me for insisting on the Third Secret of Fatima: Did Padre Pio relate it, then, to the loss of faith within the Church?”
- Fr. Gabriele furrows his brow and sticks out his chin. He seems very affected.

- “Indeed,” he states, “One day Padre Pio said to me very sorrowfully: ‘You know, Gabriele? It is Satan who has been introduced into the bosom of the Church and within a very short time will come to rule a false Church.’”
- “Oh my God! Some kind of Antichrist! When did he prophesy this to you?” I [Zavala] ask.
- “It must have been about 1960, since I was already a priest then.”
- “Was that why John XXIII had such a panic about publishing the Third Secret of Fatima, so that the people wouldn’t think that he was the anti-pope or whatever it was ...?”
- A slight but knowing smile curls the lips of Father Amorth.
- “Did Padre Pio say anything else to you about future catastrophes: earthquakes, floods, wars, epidemics, hunger ...? Did he allude to the same plagues prophesied in the Holy Scriptures?” [asks Mr. Zavala]
- “Nothing of the sort mattered to him, however terrifying they proved to be, except for the great apostasy within the Church. This was the issue that really tormented him and for which he prayed and offered a great part of his suffering, crucified out of love.” [says Fr. Amorth]
- “The Third Secret of Fatima?” “Exactly.”
- “Is there any way to avoid something so terrible, Fr. Gabriele?”
- “There is hope, but it’s useless if it’s not accompanied by works. Let us begin by consecrating Russia to the Immaculate Heart of Mary, let us recite the Holy Rosary, let us all do prayer and penance ...”

## LUCIFERIAN WORSHIP

Luciferian: Is the worship of Lucifer who is worshipped at the Vatican, St. Peter’s Basilica. These are the words used: “Flaming Lucifer finds mankind, I say. O Lucifer who will never be defeated, Christ is your son.” The worshippers at the Vatican are devil worshippers.

The cross the worshippers at the Vatican wear has an angel with two arms folded. This angel is Lucifer. Trump, president of America also wears a cross with the virgin Mary holding her Son, Jesus Christ. They don't worship Jesus Christ but Mary. Mary is dead yet the Vatican worshippers are in the White House advising Trump. They all promote union with the Papacy. They are the fallen apostate churches which seek to unite the church with the state. America has a national Cathedral. Watch the national cathedral being built in Ghana.

By uniting the church with the state, America or any other nation becomes an apostate nation under the one world religion promoted by the Antichrist. It reflects the image of the beast. This image of the beast is a union of church and state. Revelation 13 is unfolding.

Don't forget that the Vatican is both a religious and political power. This too reflects America. It will have both religious and political power according Rev. 13:16-18

At the Vatican, the Pope holds the title: "Vicarious Filii Dei. The Roman alphabets sum it up as follows:

Vicarious 112

Filii 53

Dei 501

Total 666

## ILLUMINATI SYMBOLS

**Illuminati** (also Illuminist or Illuminati) is the designation for various historical secret societies.

### 1.The owl

- An owl symbolizes wisdom. Thus it is suggested that the owl represents the **goddess Minerva**. In addition, owls see in the dark. Nothing escapes these animals!
- **Illuminati** (also Illuminist or Illuminati) is the designation for various historical secret societies.



## 2. The Nazi Salute

- Was Adolf Hitler an illuminati puppet? The Nazi salute is also regarded as a symbol of the Illuminati.

## 3. The Mark – 666

- According to Biblical writings the number 666 refers to the '**mark of the beast**, or the coming of the Antichrist. The Illuminists the Antichrist would like to place on a high dominance to dominate the world. The number 666 is used to bring to execute this plan.

## 4. Sign of Voor

- This sign supposedly Requests Something of the "Old Ones" (Demons) that were cast from the earth to the Void Beyond the Planes where Chaos Reigns (this sign of the "Ox's Horns" or "Bull's Horns" is used by famous people to show honor to the power that got them where they are).
- Comparing this gesture also with devil horns. If you pay attention, then everyone is doing it! Virtually all American presidents, the Pope and many famous artists have recorded cheerful goat greeting on image.

## 5. The eternal flame

- A flame gives light, light is a symbol of the Illuminati and the Illuminists claim to bring relief. So the circle is complete again! The conspiracy theorists know exactly why the Illuminati uses this symbol. The eternal flame symbolizes the destruction of the established order and the fueling of the New World Order.
- Perhaps the most famous flame is the flame of the 'Statue of Liberty'. Model for "Lady Liberty" was the pagan goddess Semiramis. From this line of thinking rationally symbolizes the 'Statue of Liberty' the transition from this world to the New World Order. The Olympic flame – which was introduced by the Nazis in 1936 – is part of a theory. The conspiracy theorists do not believe in coincidence!

## 6. The all-seeing eye

- The all-seeing eye is considered as the most famous symbol of the Illuminati. This symbol is an eye surrounded by rays. Sometimes, the rays have been replaced by a triangle.

- This symbol comes from Egypt; it represented the sun god Horus. Anno 2014, the all-seeing eye hangs in all temples within Freemasonry.

**The New World Order:** The New World Order is a new world government.

On the Pope's historic visit to the United States, he declared that the life of Jesus Christ ended in failure, ended in failure, failure on the cross. He never mentioned Jesus Christ's name until he made this blasphemous statement.

The people present clapped in response. He emphasized on the concept of one world religion: Jewish, Islamic, Hindu, Bhudism: Rise of one world order/religion (Rev. 17:1-6)

### **The Antichrist army standing up in Europe in 10 Nation Federation**

- The Antichrist is the satanic son of perdition, who will oppose God and will want the world to worship him.
- According to Daniel chapter 8 prophecy, the Antichrist will come from Europe. And Daniel chapter 9 refers to the Antichrist who will come from the people that destroyed Jerusalem under the Temple. This happened in 70AD General Titus.
- The Antichrist will come from Europe having the iron wheel of the Romans and the intellect of the Greeks. In Daniel chapters 8 and 11, the Antichrist rises into power through diplomacy, deceit and strategy. He will gain power not by war, but with treachery and false peace initiatives manipulate the nations.
- He will then turn to worship the god of fortresses or resort to military means to gain control and power over the nations. It's similar to how Satan influenced a third of the angels thinking by such means he would take God from His throne. The Antichrist comes with similar strategy to make himself "God." But he will lose just as Satan lost to the angelic hosts.

### **The Antichrist in Daniel's description Dan. 11:36-45**

- He will be great and powerful (Dan. 11:36).
- He will act arbitrarily, he will be a dictator (Dan. 11:36).
- He will raise himself over everything and everyone (Dan. 11:36).
- He will not care about any (God) Dan. 11:37-38.
- He will succeed in the practice of evil (Dan. 11:39).
- He will be victorious in war (Dan. 11:41).
- He will be cruel (Dan. 11:44).

- He will have a terrible end (Dan. 11:45; Rev. 19:20)

### **GOG AND MAGOG WAR EZEKIEL 38**

- Syria, Iran and Russia amassing troops towards Southern Syria to invade Israel. Now Turkey has joined the alliance.
- And also, the troops gathering at the Euphrates river confirming Revelation 9, where a third of the world's population will die. These are markers of the biblical prophetic road map showing times in which we live.
- Nobody knows what will happen in this explosive situation developing now. This is leading to the last days prophecies just as described in the Holy Scriptures. We have to watch and stay awake of the prophetic happenings now.

**QUESTION 20-33**

1. Read John 13:1-17 and answer the following:
  - Should foot washing be practiced as a church ordinance today?
  - What is the principle or truth Jesus is teaching? Is it applicable today?
2. Read and compare John 10:27-30 with Heb. 3:12. How can you reconcile the two passages?
3. Read Jer. 17:11: what figure of speech is used here. What image is created?

**QUESTION 34-41**

4. What is the root of all these various views of the Bible?
5. What makes the Bible so trustworthy?
6. What will happen if the Bible had not been written?

**QUESTIONS 42-101**

1. What does John 1:1-18 teach about the Person and work of Christ?
2. What does Job 1-2 teach about Satan?
3. What does Isaiah 45 teach about the sovereignty of God?
4. What does Romans 4 teach about salvation and faith in the Old Testament?
5. What does Psalm 145 teach about the character of God?

**QUESTIONS 102**

1. Are they (believers) called not chosen?
2. When did they miss their chosen position?
3. How did they miss their chosen position?

**QUESTION P. 107**

1. So can failure to evangelize take your name from the Book of Life?
2. Analyze the following passages in the light of the question above: 2Cor.. 5:10; 1Cor. 3:10-15)

**QUESTION: MTh. STUDENTS write 2page report; BTh. Students write 1page report on the following questions: P. 108 - 125**

1. What prompted God to save man?
2. Was God compelled to save man?
3. Would Jesus still have died if man had not sinned?
4. What should your response be with regards to all the benefits of salvation?
5. Can salvation, which is the very life of Christ be lost?
6. If salvation can be lost, does it mean the very life Christ provides which is eternal is fake?

With such tragic consequences of salvation if not accepted, why still do many neglect it?

**QUESTION: MTh. Students write 2page report; BTh. Students write 1page report on the following questions: P. 127-137**

1. Why is talking about sin not popular in the church?
2. What one word best describes sin to you?
3. How can God Who is so good create sin which is so bad?
4. Is it any wonder that Christ was sinless?
5. How do we obtain God's righteousness through Christ?
6. To your mind, has the impact for the seriousness of sin increased? How?
7. Why do so many people not believe in the biblical view of sin?
8. What is the difference between sin and sins? Which causes which?
9. Why did God make believers perfect and incapable of sinning anymore at salvation?

**QUESTION: P. 138-169**

MTh. Students write 2page report; BTh. Students write 1page report on the following questions:

1. What are the most significant differences between men and angels?
2. Are you surprised by the extent and nature of the ministry of angels? Why or why not?
3. Why is the spiritual realm of angels so organized? What does it imply?
4. What is the essence of Satan's sin? What about his strategy?
5. How would you deal with a clear case of demonic possession?
6. Why did God not make salvation available to angels?
7. Can a Christian be possessed by unclean spirit?

**QUESTION P. 170-178**

**MTh. Students write 2page report; BTh. Students write 1page report on the following questions:**

1. State the distinction between the local church and the universal church.
2. Distinguish between the church as spiritual organism and physical organization.
3. What are the purposes of the church?
4. Of all the purposes of the church, which is the most adored and the most neglected?
5. Why do so many churches today seem to ignore 1Tim. 3:1-7 in selecting church leadership? Which is the most used criteria today?
6. In what important ways does water baptism identify the believer with Christ?
7. The ordinances: Did Christ command it? Does it have meaning for believers today in the church? Did the New Testament church command it?

